

SIGHT READING
IN LATIN
A
BICE

Boston University
College of Liberal Arts
Library

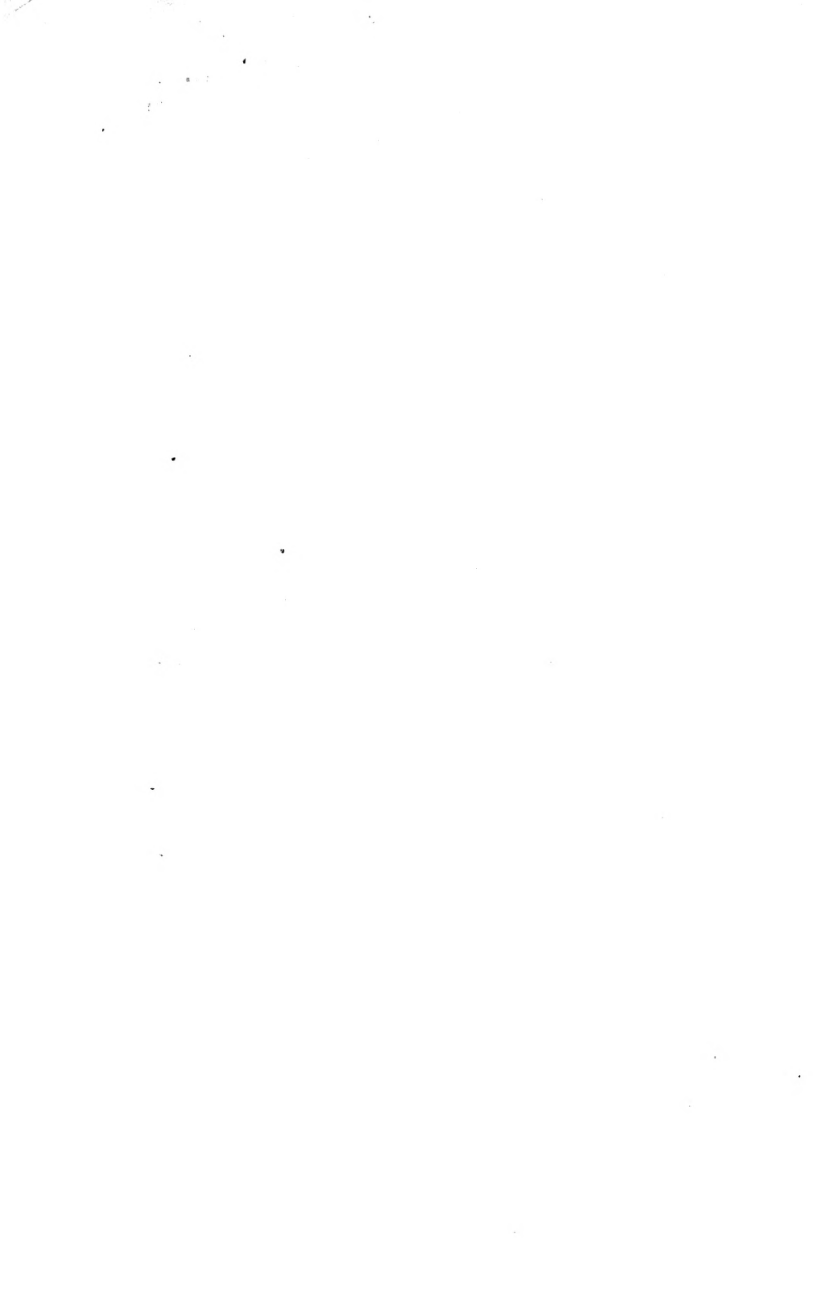
THE GIFT OF C. C. Lodge - Class of '78

December 1919

No.

~~418.7~~

~~B41~~



SIGHT READING IN LATIN
FOR THE SECOND YEAR

BY

HIRAM H. BICE

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN, DEWITT CLINTON HIGH SCHOOL
NEW YORK CITY

BOSTON UNIVERSITY
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS
LIBRARY

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1913, BY
HIRAM H. BICE

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

513.7

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

PA

2005

F12

PREFACE

The material for sight reading offered in this book may be used in two ways. Teachers who believe that the passage for translation should be placed before the pupil without preparation, will suggest for his use nothing more than the vocabulary of new words, the notes, and the rule of order accompanying each selection. Those who believe that some preparation should be made will find material suggested at the beginning of each exercise.

The grammatical references are to the common constructions found in the reading prescribed for the second year, and are illustrated in the selection which they introduce. The words which may be made the basis of a drill in inflections, as well as the words in the so-called "prescribed list," also occur in the passage. The latter are to be found in Professor Lodge's List. They include two classes: those which occur for the first time in Books III, IV, and V of the Gallic War, and those which have not occurred often or which may not have been met by the pupil in his reading of Books I and II up to the time when he sees the passage for sight work. The words of the first class are printed in heavy-faced type in the prescribed list, and in the text of the exercises when the lists are discontinued. The meanings should be given by the teacher. The rules relating to the arrangement of the words in the sentence are intended to guide the pupil in observing the grouping of words and their dependence.

The meaning of every word in the passage is given if not found in Lodge's List. Each exercise is complete in itself. Words are therefore repeated whenever necessary, even though they have appeared in previous exercises.

The book contains rather more matter than is included in Books III and IV of the Gallic War. The first thirty exercises are taken from Eutropius, Aulus Gellius, Pliny, Cicero, and Livy. In some cases needed modifications have been made in the Latin, especially in the Livy.

The other exercises are taken from Nepos's lives of Hannibal and Hamilcar, from Cæsar's Civil War, and from Books III to VII, inclusive, of the Gallic War. In every case the attempt has been made to have the Latin tell a complete episode or story in a series of exercises. Where chapters have been omitted, a résumé of the contents is given in English.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
SUGGESTIONS FOR READING AT SIGHT	vii
FORMATION OF WORDS	ix
NEW WORDS	xi
EUTROPIUS	I
AULUS GELLIUS	
A Boy in the Senate	12
Advice about the Use of Words	14
The Gratitude of a Lion	15
A Famous Horse	19
Scipio and the Bribe	20
How to make Buildings Fireproof	21
PLINY THE YOUNGER	
Choosing a Boys' School	23
A Haunted House	24
CICERO	
Two Strange Dreams	28
LIVY	
Stories of the Life of Hannibal	29
NEPOS	
Selections from the Lives:	
Hannibal	49
Hamilcar	62
CÆSAR	
Selections from the Civil War:	
Book I	66
Book II	73
Selections from the Gallic War:	
Book III	82
Book IV	102
Book V	118
Book VI	139
Book VII	143

SUGGESTIONS FOR READING AT SIGHT

To understand a Latin sentence three things must be known: the forms, the relations of the words to one another, and their meanings. Each one of these must be noted and remembered while the sentence is passing under the eye of the reader.

First, then, read each sentence through slowly and thoughtfully, aloud if possible, trying to decide, when each word is reached, what its form is or may be. Do not, when reading the sentence for the first or even for the second time, let the eye jump from place to place, but take each word as it comes. Often the next word will make plain the form of the one before it. Sometimes the form will be perfectly plain when the end of the sentence is reached. Sometimes a word may be in any one of several forms, and the first reading may not show which one it is.

After having read the sentence through in this way one or more times with the forms chiefly in mind, read it once more, trying to see rather how the words are related to one another. Of course it is not possible to avoid doing this to some extent when the sentence is read the first time, but put the attention strongly on this point now. The meanings of many of the words will naturally rise in the mind while this is being done, and will help to show the connection between the parts of the different phrases; for the other readings will have made it clear that the sentence contains a number of groups of words, perhaps prepositional phrases, perhaps nouns limited by an adjective or by a genitive or an ablative, or perhaps clauses of one kind or another. By omitting these mentally in the reading, when they are discovered, the simple, independent statement, which is the real backbone of the sentence, will be found. After this, another reading will usually show the relation which these groups have to one another and to the main statement.

If the structure is still not clear, the pupil should read the sentence again and again, following the same method, till the light comes. Sometimes the difficulty arises from an ignorance of some principle of syntax or an uncertainty about a form, which must be cleared up by reference to the grammar; or it may come from the hazy memory of the meaning of a word.

After all this the meaning of the whole sentence should be fairly certain, and it should not be a difficult matter to put it into English. If the meaning of a word has escaped the memory, leave a blank for this word in translating the sentence, and often the translation will show what meaning the unknown word must have.

It may seem that this requires much time and is a slow way of getting at the meaning. It is true that for a while this will be so. But the mind must be trained to grasp the meaning of the sentence in the order in which the Roman author developed it in his own mind, and in the order in which he put it in writing. The emphasis in a sentence is lost if the sentence is not read and interpreted in the order in which it is written. This is the only method that leads to accuracy and rapidity in understanding the language; for the Romans were particular about the placing of words, and the study of arrangement, therefore, is of the utmost importance.

THE FORMATION OF WORDS

Many Latin words are made from other Latin words by adding to the stem certain syllables called suffixes.

Those which should be taught to the pupil are given below.

tor. This suffix is added to verb stems or roots to show the doer or the agent of the action, as

imperātor = **imperā** (stem of **imperō**, command) + **tor** = one who commands, a commander.

victor = **vic** (root of **vincō**, conquer) + **tor** = one who conquers, a conqueror, a victor.

Observe the English equivalents of this suffix.

Occasionally the suffix appears as **sor**, as in **dēfēnsor**, for **dēfēndtor**.

Explain the formation of the following :

mercātor, **explōrātor**, **speculātor**, **gubernātor**, **adiūtor**.

iō, **tiō**, **tus**. These suffixes are added to verb stems or roots to form nouns which show an act or its result, as

legiō = **leg** (root of **legō**, choose, levy) + **iō** = the act or result of levying, a legion.

ōrātiō = **ōrā** (stem of **ōrō**, plead) + **tiō** = the act or result of pleading, a speech, oration.

conventus = **conven** (**con**, together, + **ven**, root of **veniō**, come) + **tus** = the act or the result of coming together or assembling, assembly, convention.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Occasionally the suffix **tus** appears as **sus**, as in **cursus** (from **currō**) for **curtus**.

Explain the formation of the following :

coniūrātiō, **mūnitiō**, **dēditiō**, **oppugnātiō**, **nāvigātiō**, **obsidiō**, **dēfēnsiō**, **occāsus**, **discessus**, **mōtus**.

ia, tia, tās, tūs, tūdō. These suffixes are added to the stems of adjectives or nouns to form nouns.

The suffixes **ia, tia, tās, tūdō**, added to adjective stems, form abstract nouns denoting quality, as

potentia = **potent** (stem of **potēns**, able, from **possum**) + **ia** = *ability*.

iūstitia = **iūsti** (weakened stem of **iūstus**, fair, just) + **tia** = *fairness, justice*.

celeritās = **celeri** (stem of **celer**, swift) + **tās** = *swiftness*.

magnitūdō = **magni** (weakened stem of **magnus**, great) + **tūdō** = *greatness, magnitude*.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Explain the formation of the following :

memoria, grātia, audācia, diligentia, sententia, amīctia, nōbilitās, libertās, altitūdō, fortitūdō, multitūdō.

The suffixes **ia, tās, tūs**, added to noun stems, form nouns denoting a condition or a characteristic, as

militia = **milit** (stem of **mīles**, soldier) + **ia** = *military service*.

civitas = **civi** (stem of **cīvis**, citizen) + **tās** = *citizenship*.

servitūs = **servi** (weakened stem of **servus**, slave) + **tūs** = *slavery, servitude*.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Explain the formation of the following :

victōria, auctōritās, tempestās, virtūs, senectūs.

The meanings of words are often changed by prefixing syllables, usually prepositions, which have their original force as adverbs. The most common meanings of the following should be taught to the pupil :

ab (ā), **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **dē**, **dis-** (dī-), **ex** (ē), **in**, **in-**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **prae**, **prō**, **re** (d)-, **sub**, **trāns**.

Determine the meaning of the prefix in the following :

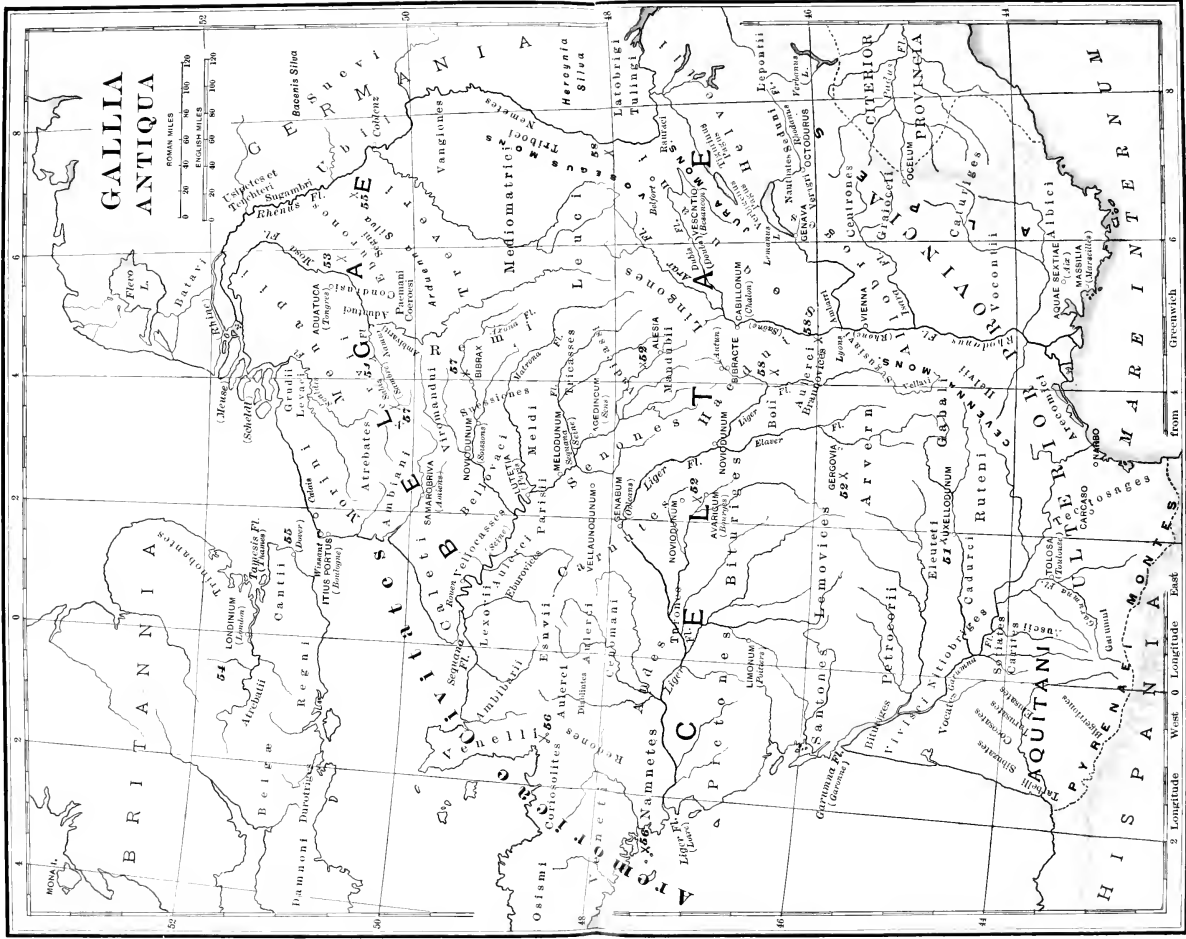
absum, āvertō, addūcō, advertō, antepōnō, antecēdō, circumveniō, circum-sistō, conveniō, cōnferō, dēciō, dēcurrō, dispōnō, dīmittō, ēnūntiō, expellō, instō, insequor, incrēdibilis, inermis, intercēdō, interpōnō, oppugnō, occurrō, perdūcō, perspicīō, praestō, praemittō, prōiciō, prōcēdō, respiciō, renovō, redeō, suscipiō, trānseō, trādūcō.

NEW WORDS

The following list includes such words of Caesar, in Professor Lodge's Vocabulary for High School Latin, as do not occur in Books I and II of the Gallic War. With each is given the page and line where it first appears in this book. The meaning should be fixed in mind at the time when the word is first met.

PAGE LINE	PAGE LINE	PAGE LINE
adimō . . . 36 18	cōnsector . . . 95 9	mare . . . 3 12
aedificō . . . 4 2	cōnstō . . . 46 16	māteria . . . 69 5
aestus . . . 89 9	coorior . . . 33 5	mōlēs . . . 90 4
alacer . . . 99 14	corōna . . . 56 2	mollis . . . 20 3
aliquot . . . 34 13	cunctor . . . 46 1	mōtus . . . 113 14
ancora . . . 81 14	dēdecus . . . 116 2	nauta . . . 124 6
appellō (3) . . . 74 3	dēfigō . . . 110 17	nāvigātiō . . . 122 6
aptus . . . 92 3	dēsiliō . . . 103 7	nāvigō . . . 28 4
aqua . . . 31 7	distō . . . 111 1	noceō . . . 62 5
aquila . . . 115 9	distribuō . . . 146 1	nōscō . . . 114 9
āridus . . . 114 8	ēvādō . . . 11 4	obsidiō . . . 33 1
avis . . . 106 9	ēveniō . . . 38 10	occāsiō . . . 62 6
bīnī . . . 56 12	ēvocō . . . 67 1	octīngentī . . . 38 12
bis . . . 81 2	ferreus . . . 70 13	onerārius . . . 69 4
caedō . . . 69 12	flūctus . . . 91 4	paenitet . . . 105 9
callidus . . . 58 3	frūstrā . . . 86 5	parum . . . 69 5
carō . . . 127 7	fūnis . . . 91 8	pecus . . . 44 9
cautēs . . . 92 9	gubernātor . . . 72 5	peragō . . . 118 13
certāmen . . . 32 8	hiems . . . 102 1	pergō . . . 98 8
cibus . . . 16 4	humilis . . . 77 4	plānus . . . 14 3
clam . . . 57 3	immittō . . . 19 5	portus . . . 68 11
classis . . . 62 9	īnsula . . . 62 10	praeda . . . 31 5
cōnfestim . . . 145 2	lac . . . 102 14	prōnūntiō . . . 77 28
cōnscendō . . . 28 3	lītus . . . 113 8	prōnus . . . 110 20

	PAGE	LINE		PAGE	LINE		PAGE	LINE
puppis . . .	91	4	rōstrum . . .	92	4	ubīque . . .	69	4
quamvis . . .	104	3	saeviō . . .	92	7	ūndecim . . .	144	7
quoad . . .	72	6	sagitta . . .	79	18	ūtilis . . .	12	8
rārus . . .	90	10	saucius . . .	52	19	vallēs . . .	83	1
reficiō . . .	34	15	septem . . .	66	5	vēlum . . .	57	14
regō . . .	91	12	septingentī	126	14	ventus . . .	57	14
rēmus . . .	92	2	septuāgintā	108	11	vēstīgium . . .	77	24
renovō . . .	43	14	tempestās . . .	79	20			
rōbur . . .	45	9	tū	14	5			



from Greenwich

West 0 Longitude East

SIGHT READING IN LATIN

EXERCISE I

Grammar: A. 305; 419; 423; 530; 531, 2; 549. B. 250, 1; 227; 230; 181; 282, 2; 286, 2. G. 614; 409; 393; 336; 630; 586. H. 396; 489; 486; 417; 589; 598.

Inflection: agō; mōns; ūnus; quī.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is: (1) subject; (2) modifiers of subject; (3) modifiers of verb; (4) verb.

Prescribed list:

imperium	ferē	tum	vīcit
initium	ēgīt	nātiōnēs	rēgnī
filius	recēpit	commōtis	per
cīvitāte	cōnsiliō	iniūriam	imperāvērunt
nōmine	propter		

HOW ROMULUS, THE FOUNDER OF ROME, HELPED THE CITY TO GROW

Imperium Rōmānum¹ ā Rōmulō initium habet, quī² Reae Silviae, Vestālīs virginis,³ filius fuit. Is, octōdecim annōs⁴ nātus, urbem parvam in Palātīnō⁵ monte cōstituit. Conditā cīvitāte, quam⁶ ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgīt.⁷ Multitūdinem finitimōrum in cīvitātem⁸ recēpit, centum⁹ ex seniōribus lēgīt, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem.¹⁰ Tum, cum¹¹ uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent, invitāvit¹² ad spectāculum¹³ lūdōrum vicinas urbis Rōmae nātiōnēs, atque eārum¹⁴ virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellīs propter raptārum¹⁵ iniūriam, multās vicinās nātiōnēs vīcit. Annō¹⁶

rēgnī trīcēsīmō septimō ad deōs trānsisse¹⁷ crēditus est. Deinde Rōmae¹⁸ per quinōs diēs senātōrēs imperāvērunt et his rēgnantibus¹⁹ annus ūnus complētus est. — EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, <i>be born</i>	vīcīnus, a, um, <i>neighboring</i> (vicinity)
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	rapīō, 3, uī, tus, <i>carry off</i>
condō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>found</i>	trīcēsīmus, a, um, <i>thirtieth</i>
vocō, 1, call (vocal)	deus, ī, m., <i>god</i>
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>believe</i>
uxor, ōris, f., <i>wife</i>	deinde, <i>then</i>
lūdus, ī, m., <i>game</i>	quīnī, <i>five each</i>

NOTES

¹ Rōmānum: adjective formed from the noun Rōma by the suffix ānus, *belonging to*. ² quī: in what respect does this pronoun agree with its antecedent? What word, then, is its antecedent? ³ Vestālis virginis: a priestess who kept the fire of Vesta. ⁴ octōdecīm annōs: what do these words tell about nātus? ⁵ Palātīnō: one of the seven hills of Rome. ⁶ quam: relative pronoun. ⁷ haec ferē ēgit: *he did about as follows*. ⁸ civitātem: this word and civitāte above refer to Rome. ⁹ centum: indeclinable. Senātōrēs below shows that virōs is understood with centum. ¹⁰ senectūtem: derive the meaning of this word by connecting it with the stem of senex. What does senātōrēs really mean? ¹¹ cum: causal. ¹² invītāvit: infer the meaning from the English derivative. ¹³ spectāculum: see note on invītāvit. ¹⁴ eārum: refers to nātiōnēs. ¹⁵ raptārum: render by a demonstrative and a relative clause. ¹⁶ annō: compare this use of the word with that in annōs above. ¹⁷ trānsisse: trāns + eō. ¹⁸ Rōmae: locative. ¹⁹ rēgnantibus: from rēgnō. Think of rēgnum and regō.

This passage contains three examples of the ablative absolute. By what kind of clause should each be translated?

EXERCISE II

Grammar: A. 282; 286; 343; 362; 370; 419. B. 169. 1; 233; 3; 234; 198; 195; 187, I, III; 227. G. 320; 289; 362; 345; 347; 409. H. 393; 394; 440, 1; 424; 429; 489.

Inflection: augeō; mōs; minus (compare); hīc.

Order of words : the arrangement of the words in the sentence represents the order of the development of the thought in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list :

creātus est	aliquā	filīā	apud
quidem	successit	suscēpit	suprā
cōnsuētūdine	vīcit	contrā	mare
putābantur	superāvit	dīmīcāvit	sextō
mēnsīs	post	cīvitātī	decimō

HOW NUMA POMPILIUS, TULLUS HOSTILIUS, AND
ANCUS MARCIUS ENLARGED ROME

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx¹ creātus est, quī bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī quam² Rōmulus prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānis mōrēsque cōstituit, quī³ cōnsuētūdine proeliōrum sēmibarbarī⁴ putābantur, et annum dēscripsit, in decem mēnsīs prius sine aliquā computātiōne cōnfusum,⁵ et infinita Rōmae sacra ac templa cōstituit. Huic successit⁶ Tullus Hostilius. Hīc bella gessit, Albānōs vīcit, quī ab urbe Rōmā duodecimō miliārīō sunt, Vēientis et Fidēnātēs bellō superāvit, urbem auxit, adiectō Caeliō⁷ monte. Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filīā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmīcāvit, Aventīnum⁷ montem cīvitātī adīecit et Iāniculum, apud ōstium Tiberis cīvitātem suprā mare sextō decimō miliārīō ab urbe Rōmā condidit. — EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, <i>be helpful</i>	urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>
lēx, lēgis, f., <i>law (legal)</i>	miliārīum, miliārī, n., <i>mile-stone (mile)</i>
dēscribō, 3. scrīpsī, scrīptus, <i>mark out</i>	adiciō, 3. iēcī, iectus, <i>add to</i>
computātiō, ōnis, f., <i>reckoning</i>	nepōs, ōtis, m., <i>grandson</i>
cōfundō, 3. fūdī, fūsus, <i>confuse</i>	ōstium, ōstī, n., <i>mouth</i>
īnfinītus, a, um, <i>without end (infinite)</i>	condō, 3. didī, dītus, <i>found</i>
sacra, ōrum, n., <i>rites</i>	
templum, ī, n., <i>temple</i>	

NOTES

¹ *rēx*: predicate nominative after *creātus est*. ² *quam*: take with *minus*.
³ *quī*: refers to *Rōmānīs*. ⁴ *sēmibarbarī*: the prefix *sēmi* means *half*, as in "semicircle." For the case, see note on *rēx*. ⁵ *cōnfūsum*: with what does this participle agree? ⁶ *huic successit*, etc.: *him succeeded Tullus Hostilius*. *Huic* is emphatic. ⁷ *Caeliō, Aventinum*: two of the seven hills of Rome.

Think of English words from *creātus*, *lēgēs*, *cōstituit*, *contrā*, *mare*, and other words in the passage.

EXERCISE III

Grammar: A. 346; 370; 419; 420; 423. B. 201; 187, III; 227, 2; 230. G. 367; 368; 347; 409; 410; 393. H. 440, 5; 429; 489, 1; 486.

Inflection: *ferō*; *pars*; *omnis*; *īdem*.

Order of words: adjectives and genitives, if emphatic, stand before the nouns which they limit; if not emphatic, after their nouns.

Prescribed list:

<i>deinde</i>	<i>inīvit</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>fossās</i>
<i>accēpit</i>	<i>mūrōs</i>	<i>successerat</i>	<i>imperāvit</i>
<i>aedificāvit</i>	<i>octāvō</i>	<i>post</i>	<i>terrārum</i>
<i>īstituit</i>	<i>imperī</i>	<i>suscēpit</i>	<i>dēlātīs</i>
<i>memoriam</i>	<i>occīsus est</i>	<i>quoque</i>	<i>fīliae</i>

THE DEEDS OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS AND SERVIUS
TULLIUS, KINGS OF ROME

Deinde *rēgnum* *Tarquinius Priscus* *accēpit*. *Hic* *numerum* *senātōrum*¹ *duplicāvit*, *circum*² *Rōmae* *aedificāvit*, *lūdōs* *Rōmānōs* *īstituit*, *quī* *ad* *nostram* *memoriam* *permanent*.³ *Vicit*⁴ *īdem* *etiam* *Sabīnōs* *et* *partem* *agrōrum* *urbis* *Rōmae* *territōriō* *adiūnxit*,⁵ *pri-*
musque *triumphāns*⁶ *urbem* *inīvit*. *Mūrōs* *fēcit* *et* *cloācās*. *Trī-*
cēsīmō *octāvō* *imperī* *annō* *occīsus est* *per* *Ancī* *filiōs*,⁷ *rēgis* *eius* *cui* *ipse* *successerat*. *Post* *hunc* *Servius Tullius* *suscēpit* *imperium*. *Hic* *quoque* *Sabīnōs* *vicit*, *montis*⁸ *trīs*, *Quirīnālem*, *Viminālem*,

Ēsquilinum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circā mūrum dūxit. Primus cēnsus omnium imperāvit, quī adhūc⁹ per orbem terrārum incognitus¹⁰ erat. Sub eō Rōma omnibus in cēnsus dēlātis habuit octō-gintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum iis quī in agris erant. Occīsus est quadrāgēsīmō quīntō imperī annō scelere generī suī Tarquinī, filiī eius rēgis cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquinius habēbat uxōrem. — EUTROPIUS, I

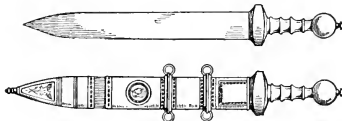
VOCABULARY

circus, ī, m., <i>the circus Maximus</i>	cēnsus, ūs, m., <i>census</i>
lūdus, ī, m., <i>game</i>	orbis, is, m., <i>circle, (with terrārum)</i> <i>world</i>
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	scelus, eris, n., <i>crime</i>
territōrium, territōrī, n., <i>domain</i> (territory)	quadrāgēsīmus, a, um, <i>fortieth</i>
cloāca, ae, f., <i>sewer</i>	gener, erī, m., <i>son-in-law</i>
trīcēsīmus, a, um, <i>thirtieth</i>	uxor, ōris, f., <i>wife</i>
circā, prep., <i>around, round</i>	

NOTES

¹ senātōrum, duplicāvit: infer the meaning from the English derivatives.
² circum: where the chariot races were held. ³ permanent: per + maneō.
⁴ vicit: emphatic. ⁵ adiūnxit: ad + iungō. ⁶ triumphāns: refers to the entry of a general into Rome after a successful campaign. ⁷ per filiōs: how does this differ from ā filiīs? ⁸ montīs: hills. ⁹ adhūc: ad + hoc. It refers to time. ¹⁰ incognitus: in + cognōscō.

Determine the emphasis, or lack of it, in the case of each genitive in this passage.



GLADII

EXERCISE IV

Grammar: A. 413; 426, 2; 427, 3; 530; 531, 1; 579; 580. B. 222; 182, 1, 2; 232, 1; 282, 1; 313; 314, 1. G. 392; 337, R. 1; 411; 545, 1, 3; 648; 650. H. 473, 1; 418; 483; 568; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: volō; exercitus; septimus; ipse.

Order of words: the demonstrative pronouns regularly precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

ultimus	quoque	ducentīs	alter
pācem	vīgintī	quadrāgintā	potestātem
posteā	liberīs	hinc	redderentur
octāvō	fūgit	coepērunt	scīrent
decimō	ita	creārī	

THE LAST KING IS EXPELLED FROM ROME AND
CONSULS ARE ELECTED

Lūcius Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns nōn longē ab urbe est, vīcit, cum¹ Tuscīs pācem fēcit, et templum Iovī² in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā Ardeam oppugnāns, civitātem in octāvō decimō miliārīō ab urbe positam, scelere fili sui imperium perdidit. Propter quod scelus Brūtus, parēns Tarquinī, populum commōvit. Exercitus quoque, quī civitātem Ardeam cum ipsō rēge oppugnābat, eum reliquit; et rēx ad urbem veniēns exclusus est,³ cumque imperāset⁴ annōs vīgintī quīnque, cum uxōre et liberīs suis fūgit. Ita Rōmae⁵ rēgnātum est⁶ per septem rēgēs annīs ducentīs quadrāgintā tribus. Hinc cōsulēs coepērunt prō ūnō rēge duo⁷ hāc causā creārī, ut, sī ūnus malus⁸ esse voluisset, alter habēns potestātem similem eum coerceret. Et placuit⁹ nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis insolentiōrēs¹⁰ redderentur, sed civīlēs semper essent, quī sē¹¹ post annum scīrent futūrōs esse prīvātōs.

EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

<i>gēns, gentis, f., tribe</i>	<i>malus, a, um, bad</i>
<i>urbs, urbis, f., city</i>	<i>similis, e, like (similar)</i>
<i>mīliārium, mīliārī, n., milestone</i>	<i>coerceō, 2, uī, itus, check</i>
<i>scelus, eris, n., crime</i>	<i>placeō, 2, uī, itum, please</i>
<i>perdō, 3, didī, ditus, lose</i>	<i>diūturnitās, ātis, f., long duration</i>
<i>parēns, entis, m., f., relative</i>	<i>cīvīlis, e, civil, of the citizens</i>
<i>uxor, ōris, f., wife</i>	<i>semper, always</i>

NOTES

¹ *cum*: what part of speech? Consider the case of *Tuscis*. ² *Iovī*: dative case of *Iuppiter*. ³ *exclūsus est*: from *exclūdō*. Infer the meaning from the English derivative. ⁴ *imperāsset*: for *imperāvisset*; the *v* is dropped and the two vowels are contracted. ⁵ *Rōmae*: what question about *rēgnātum est* does this word seem to answer? ⁶ *rēgnātum est*: the ending *um* shows that the subject is neuter, *it*. Such impersonal forms are often used, where the English idiom employs the personal construction; *the government was carried on*. ⁷ *duo*: take with *cōsulēs*. ⁸ *malus*: predicate adjective. ⁹ *placuit*: impersonal. ¹⁰ *insolentiōrēs*: first determine the positive; then infer the meaning from the English derivative. ¹¹ *sē*: to what word does it refer? For the case, note the ending of *futūrōs*.

Think of English words from *pācem, aedificāvit, positam, ūnus*.

EXERCISE V

Grammar: A. 419; 423, 1; 530; 531, 1; 549; 563. B. 227; 230; 282, 1; 286, 2; 295, 4. G. 409; 385; 545, 1, 3; 586; 546. H. 489; 483; 568; 598; 565.

Inflection: *possum*; *auxilium*; *multus* (compare); *suī*.

Order of words: an appositive usually follows the word to which it belongs.

Prescribed list:

<i>maximē</i>	<i>rēgnum</i>	<i>quoque</i>	<i>tunc</i>
<i>autem</i>	<i>restitūī</i>	<i>iterum</i>	<i>suscipī</i>
<i>quisquam</i>	<i>dīmicāvit</i>	<i>reciperētur</i>	<i>sē contulit</i>
<i>manēret</i>	<i>occīdērunt</i>	<i>paene</i>	<i>longē</i>
<i>tamen</i>	<i>revertērunt</i>	<i>vērūm</i>	

THE FIRST CONSULS ARE ELECTED AND BEGIN WAR
WITH TARQUINIUS

Fuērunt¹ annō primō expulsīs² rēgibus cōsulēs Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus, quī maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur, et Tarquinius Collātinus. Placuit³ autem nē quisquam in urbe manēret quī Tarquinius⁴ vocārētur. Ergō Collātinus ex urbe migrāvit et locō ipsius factus est Valerius Pūblicola cōsul.⁵ Commōvit tamen bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī erat expulsus, et collēctis multis gentibus, ut in rēgnum posset restituī,⁶ dīmīcāvit. In primā pugnā Brūtus cōsul et Arūns, Tarquini filius, in vicem⁷ sē occidērunt. Rōmāni tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs revertērunt. Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperētur in rēgnum, bellum Rōmānis⁸ intulit, auxiliū⁹ eī ferente Porsenā, Tusciae rēge, et Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērūm tunc quoque victus est. Tertiō annō post rēgēs expulsōs Tarquinius, cum suscipī nōn posset in rēgnum,¹⁰ neque eī Porsena, quī pācem cum Rōmānis fēcerat, auxiliū ferret, Tusculum sē contulit, quae civitās nōn longē ab urbe est, atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs privātus¹¹ cum uxōre vixit.

EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

placeō, 2, uī, itum, <i>please</i>	colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>gather together</i>
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	
vocō, 1, <i>call</i>	gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>
ergō, <i>therefore</i>	uxor, ōris, f., <i>wife</i>
migrō, 1, <i>depart (migrate)</i>	vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, <i>live</i>

NOTES

¹ **fuērunt**: with intransitive verbs two nominatives may be expected, one subject, one predicate. ² **expulsīs**: in what ways may this construction be translated? Which is best here? ³ **placuit**: impersonal. ⁴ **Tarquinius**: predicate nominative after **vocārētur**. ⁵ **cōsul**: see note on **Tarquinius**. ⁶ **ut . . . restituī**: this states the purpose of **dīmīcāvit**. ⁷ **in vicem**: *in turn*. ⁸ **Rōmānis**: in what case? Consider the verb. ⁹ **auxiliū**: object of **ferente**. ¹⁰ **cum . . . rēgnum**: this answers the question "why" about **sē contulit**. ¹¹ **privātus**: from **privō**; *in retirement*.

EXERCISE VI

Grammar: A. 291, *b*; 305; 362; 370; 423, 1. B. 240, 2; 250, 1; 187, 1, III; 230. G. 614; 345; 347; 393. H. 498; 396; 424; 429; 486.

Inflection: eō; nōmen; alter; is.

Order of words: adverbs are regularly placed before the words which they modify.

Prescribed list:

posteā	autem	obsidibus	poscere
imperāvit	ferē	aggressus	adversum
deinde	intulit	rediēns	fūgit
gravissima	nē . . . quidem	coepit	vacuam
prōcessit	cognitum erat		

CÆSAR CONQUERS GAUL, VISITS BRITAIN, AND RETURNS
TO ROME WITH HIS ARMY

Annō urbis conditæ¹ sescentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō tertiō Gāius Iūlius Caesar, quī posteā imperāvit, cum Lūciō Bibulō cōsul² factus est. Dēcrēta est³ eī Gallia et Īllyricum cum legiōnibus decem. Is primō vicit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī⁴ appellantur, deinde per bella gravissima ūsque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit. Domuit⁵ autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpīs, flūmen Rhodanum,⁶ Rhēnum,⁶ et Ōceanum est. Britannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cognitum erat, et eōs⁷ quoque victōs⁸ obsidibus⁹ acceptis stipendiārīos fēcit. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum aggressus immānissimīs proeliīs vicit. Caesar rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōsulātum, et adversum patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa¹⁰ nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit¹¹ et in Graeciam trānsiit. Ibi, Pompēiō duce, senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit. Caesar autem vacuam urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. — EUTROPIUS, VI

VOCABULARY

urbs, urbis, f., *city*
 condō, 3, didī, ditus, *found*
 sescentēsimus, a, um, *six hundredth*
 nōnāgēsimus, a, um, *ninetieth*
 dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, *decree*
 ūsque, *all the way, even*
 domō, 1, uī, itus, *subdue*

mox, *soon*
 stīpendiārius, a, um, *tributary*
 (stipend)
 immānis, e, *huge, great*
 cōsulātus, ūs, m., *consulship*
 patria, ae, f., *native land or city*
 ingrediōr, gredī, gressus, *enter*
 dictātor, ōris, m., *dictator*

NOTES

¹ *conditae*: translate as a noun with *after*. ² *cōsul*: predicate noun used with *factus est*. ³ *dēcrēta est*: agrees with the nearer subject. ⁴ *Sēquanī*: predicate noun. ⁵ *domuit*: note the emphatic position. See *dēcrēta est* above. ⁶ *Rhodanum, Rhēnum*: *Rhone, Rhine*. ⁷ *eōs, stīpendiāriōs*: which of these is the direct object of *fēcit*, and which the predicate accusative? ⁸ *victōs*: translate by a clause. ⁹ *obsidibus*: what construction does this illustrate, and what is the best way to translate it? ¹⁰ *ūniversa*: infer the meaning from the synonym *omnis*, and think of an English derivative. ¹¹ *fūgit*: see note on *dēcrēta est*.

EXERCISE VII

Grammar: A. 412; 456; 530; 531, 1; 579; 580. B. 220, 1; 328, 1; 282, 1; 313; 314. G. 399; 423, 1, 2; 545, 1, 3; 648; 650. H. 473, 3; 607; 568; 642; 643.

Inflection: nōlō; caput; maior; ille.

Order of words: words depending on a noun accompanied by a modifier are often put between the noun and the modifier.

Prescribed list:

fortissimōs	tamen	deinde	occīdit
superāvit	nocte	apud	caput
inde	nec	utrimque	cōspectō
adversum	scīre	contrā	lacrimās
ēvāsit	tantum		

POMPEY'S LONG CONFLICT WITH CAESAR, FOLLOWED BY
HIS DEFEAT AND DEATH

In Hispāniā¹ Caesar exercitūs Pompēi validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus superāvit. Inde in Graeciam trānsiit et adversum² Pompēium dīmīcāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus, ēvāsīt tamen quia nocte³ Pompēius sequī nōluit, dixitque Caesar nec Pompēium scīre⁴ vincere et illō tantum⁵ diē sē⁶ potuisse superārī. Deinde in Thessaliā⁷ apud Palaepharsālum prōductīs utrimque ingentibus cōpiīs dīmīcāvērunt. Numquam adhūc cōpiae Rōmānae in ūnum⁸ neque maiōres neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant, tōtum terrārum orbem⁹ facile subāctūrae sī contrā barbarōs dūcerentur. Pugnātum est¹⁰ ingentī contentiōne,¹¹ victusque est ad postrēmum Pompēius, quī Alexandriam petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī acciperet auxilia.¹² Quī¹³ fortunam magis quam amicitiam secūtus occīdit Pompēium, caput eius ad Caesarem misīt. Quō cōspectō Caesar etiam lacrimās fūdisse dicitur, tantī virī intuēns caput et generī quondam suī. — EUTROPIUS, VI

VOCABULARY

validus, a, um, <i>strong</i> (valid)	subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, <i>subdue</i>
fugō, 1, <i>put to flight</i>	contentiō, ōnis, f., <i>conflict</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, <i>shed</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	intueor, 2, tuitus or tūtus, <i>look upon</i>
adhūc, <i>thus far</i>	gener, erī, m., <i>son-in-law</i>
orbis, is, m., <i>circle</i> (orb)	quondam, <i>once</i>

NOTES

¹ Hispāniā: *Spain*. ² adversum: synonym of contrā. ³ nocte: what question about sequī does this answer? ⁴ scīre: *know how*. ⁵ tantum: adverb, *only*. ⁶ sē: to whom does this refer? ⁷ Thessaliā: Thessaly, a district of northern Greece. ⁸ ūnum: supply locum. ⁹ terrārum orbem: *the world*. ¹⁰ pugnātum est: impersonal. Translate by the personal construction. ¹¹ ingentī contentiōne: answers the question "how" about pugnātum est. ¹² ut . . . auxilia: gives the purpose of petiit. ¹³ quī: what word is the antecedent? Why is quī put first?

Select from the passage examples of emphatic words or phrases.

EXERCISE VIII

Grammar: A. 194. *b*; 196: 427, 3; 496; 563; 574. B. 115; 232, 1; 337, 2, *a, c*; 295. 4; 300, 1. G. 251, 1; 129; 411; 282; 546, 1, 2; 467. H. 237; 483; 638, 1; 565; 649, II.

Inflection: *fiō*; *diēs*; *posterus*; *suus*.

Order of words: in all sentences the beginning is a place of emphasis, and there is usually put the emphatic word, phrase, or clause.

Prescribed list:

<i>mōs</i>	<i>mulier</i>	<i>ūtilius</i>	<i>potius</i>
<i>ēnūntiāret</i>	<i>autem</i>	<i>ubi</i>	<i>īnstitisset</i>
<i>priusquam</i>	<i>cupidior</i>	<i>postrīdiē</i>	<i>fidem</i>
<i>ēgissent</i>	<i>tandem</i>	<i>ōrant</i>	<i>praeter</i>
<i>licēre</i>	<i>urgente</i>		

HOW PAPIRIUS AVOIDED TELLING HIS MOTHER WHAT
WAS DONE IN THE SENATE

Mōs antea¹ senātōribus Rōmae fuit in cūriam cum praetextātis filiis inire. Forte rēs maior quaequam cōsultāta² et in diem posterum prōlāta est, placuitque nē quis³ eam rem ēnūntiāret priusquam dēcrēta esset. Sed māter Papīri⁴ puerī, quī cum patre suō in cūriā fuerat, percontāta est filium quid in senātū patrēs ēgissent. Puer respondit tacendum esse⁵ neque id dicī licēre. Mulier autem fit audiendī cupidior, ac tandem puer, mātrem urgente,⁶ āctum⁷ in senātū dixit utrum vidērētur ūtilius esse, ūnusne ut duās uxōrēs habēret an ut ūna duōbus nūpta esset. Ubi illa hoc audivit, domō trepidāns ēgreditur, ad ceterās⁸ matrōnās sē adfert. Pervēnit ad senātum postridiē matrū familiās caterva. Lacrimantēs⁹ ōrant ut ūna potius duōbus nūpta fieret quam ut duae ūni. Senātōrēs in cūriam ingredientēs mirābantur quae illa mulierum insānia¹⁰ et quid sibi postulatiō¹¹ ista vellet.¹² Puer Papīrius in medium cūriae prōgressus, quid māter audire īnstitisset, quid ipse mātrī dīxisset, dēmōstrat. Senātus fidem atque ingenium puerī laudat

et cōsultum facit nē posthāc puerī cum patribus in cūriam ineant, praeter illum ūnum Papīrium, cui postea cognōmen¹³ honōris grātiā datum est "Praetextātus." — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

cūria, ae, f., <i>senate house</i>	percontor, i, <i>inquire</i>
praetextātus, a, um, <i>wearing the toga of boyhood</i>	taceō, 2, uī, itus, <i>be silent (tacit)</i>
forte, <i>by chance</i>	uxor, ōris, f., <i>wife</i>
quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam, <i>some</i>	nūpta, <i>married</i>
cōsultō, 1, <i>consider</i>	trepidō, 1, <i>be in alarm</i>
placeō, 2, uī, itum, <i>please</i>	caterva, ae, f., <i>crowd</i>
dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, <i>decide</i>	ingenium, inge'nī, n., <i>ability</i>
	cōsultum, ī, n., <i>decree</i>

NOTES

¹ anteā: adverb from ante. ² cōsultāta: est is understood. ³ quis: pronouns are usually indefinite when they follow nē. ⁴ Papīri: genitive. ⁵ tacendum esse: impersonal; the form shows necessity. ⁶ mātē urgente: this states a reason for the boy's action. ⁷ āctum: what mood? Consider dixit. Translate, *there had been a discussion*. ⁸ cēterās: synonym of reliquī. ⁹ lacrimantēs: for the meaning, compare the noun lacrima. ¹⁰ insānia: think of the English derivative. ¹¹ postulātiō: postulō + tiō. ¹² sibi vellet: *meant*. ¹³ cognōmen: *name*. One given because of some characteristic or act.

Think of English words from ēnūntiāret, filium, urgente, ūtilius, fidem, ingenium, facit.



AQUILA LEGIONIS

EXERCISE IX

Grammar: A. 405; 410; 412; 448; 540. B. 216; 218, I; 220, I; 281; 286. I. G. 401; 407; 399; 266; 540; 541. H. 468; 477; 473. 3; 522; 588, I, II.

Inflection: ūtor; vir; multus (compare); tū.

Order of words: in a clause or sentence words are usually arranged, from the beginning, in the order of their prominence in the thought.

Prescribed list:

verbōrum	plānē	vīs
cupidissimō	tū	scīre

FAVORINUS GIVES GOOD ADVICE ABOUT THE USE OF WORDS

Favōrinus philosophus¹ adulēscētī, veterum verbōrum² in cotīdīānīs sermōnibus ignōtōrum cupidissimō, "Curius," inquit, "et Fabricius et Coruncānius, antiq̄uissimī³ virī, plānē cum suis locūtī sunt, neque Auruncōrum aut Sicānōrum aut Pelasgōrum, quī prīmī coluisse Itāliam dicuntur, sed aetātis suae verbīs ūsī sunt; tū autem sermōne abhinc multīs annīs iam dēsītō ūteris, quod nēmīnem vīs scīre atque intellegere quae dicās. Antīquitātem⁴ tibi placēre ais, quod honesta et bona et modesta sit. Vīve ergō mōribus antiq̄uīs, loquere verbīs praesentibus; atque id, quod ā Gāiō Caesare scriptum est, habē semper in memoriā atque in pectore, ut tamquam saxum sic fugiās insolēns verbum." — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, entis, m., f., *youth*
 sermō, ōnis, m., *talk*
 ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*
 inquit (defective verb), *says*
 colō, 3. coluī, cultus, *dwell in*
 aetās, ātis, f., *age*
 dēsīnō, 3. sīvī, situs, *leave off*
 piaceō, 2, uī, itum, *please*

aiō (defective verb), *say*
 vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*
 ergō, *therefore*
 pectus, oris, n., *breast, heart*
 tamquam, *as if*
 saxum, ī, n., *rock*
 insolēns, entis, *unusual*

NOTES

¹ *philosophus*: English derivative? ² *verbōrum*: take with *cupidissimō*.
³ *antiquissimī*: what is the positive? Synonym of *vetus*. For the meaning, think of an English derivative. ⁴ *antiquitātem*: formed by attaching a suffix to the stem of the positive of *antiquissimī*. What is the suffix?

Determine whether the following words are emphatic: (l. 1) *verbōrum*, *cotidiānis*; (l. 3) *plānē*; (l. 4) *primī*; (l. 6) *ūteris*; (l. 11) *insolēns*.

EXERCISE X

Grammar: A. 415; 546; 573; 574. B. 224; 288, 1, B; 300, 1. G. 400; 585; 452, 2; 467. H. 473, 2; 600, II, 1; 649, II.

Inflection: *dō*; *manus*; *cōsulāris*; *ego*.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

Prescribed list:

ferae	familiāris	linguā	cotidiānis
praeter	tum	mīra	concessī
corpore	mōre	quaerit	dēfuisset
fremitū	prope	obtinēret	cibus
converterat			

A LION LET LOOSE IN THE AMPHITHEATER REFUSES TO
ATTACK ANDROCLUS, BUT FAWNS ON HIM

In circō¹ maximō vĕnātiōnis pugna populō dabātur. Multae ibi ferae, sed praeter alia omnia leō corpore vāstō et fremitū terrificō² animōs oculōsque³ omnium in sēsē converterat. Intrōductus⁴ erat inter complūris cēterōs⁵ ad pugnam ferārum datōs servus virī cōsulāris⁶; eī servō⁷ Androclus nōmen fuit. Hunc ille leō ubi vidit procul, repente quasi admīrāns stetit ac deinde placidē, tamquam familiāris,⁸ ad hominem accēdit. Tum caudam mōre adūlantium canum blandē movet et manūs hominis, prope iam exanimātī metū,⁹ linguā lēniter dēmulcet. Haec tam mīra rēs maximōs populī clāmōrēs excitat et Caesar Androclum vocat quaeritque causam, cūr illi unī atrōcissimus leō perpercisset. Ibi Androclus rem admirandam

nārrat. "Cum prōvinciam," inquit, "Āfricam prōcōsulārī imperiō meus dominus obtinēret, ego ibi iniquis¹⁰ eius et cotidiānis verberibus ad fugam sum coāctus, et in locōs dēsertōs et remōtōs concessi ac, sī dēfuisset cibus, cōnsilium fuit mortem aliquō pactō quaerere."

AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

vēnātiō, ōnis, f., *hunting*
 leō, ōnis, m., *lion*
 servus, ī, m., *slave* (servile)
 procul, *at a distance*
 repente, *suddenly*
 quasi, *just as if*
 stō, 1, steti, statum, *stand*
 placidē, *calmly*
 tamquam, *as if*
 cauda, ae, f., *tail*

adūlor, 1, *faun*
 canis, is, m., f., *dog* (canine)
 blandē, *gently*
 lēniter, *lightly*
 dēmulcēō, 2, mulsī, mulctus, *stroke*
 atrōx, ōcis, *fierce*
 parcō, 3, pepercī, parsum, *spare*
 dominus, ī, m., *master*
 verber, eris, n., *lash*
 pactum, ī, n., *way*

NOTES

¹ circō: think of the English derivative; a place of entertainment.
² terrificō: there is a common English derivative. ³ oculōs: from this is derived the word "oculist."
⁴ intrōductus: from intrō, *within*, + dūcō.
⁵ cēterōs: synonym of reliquī. ⁶ cōnsulāris: from cōnsul + āris = *pertaining to, of the rank of*.
⁷ servō: a dative, showing the possessor. Translate it as if it were a nominative, and fuit by the appropriate tense of the verb *have*.
⁸ familiāris: compare the derivation of this word with that of cōnsulāris.
⁹ metū: synonym of timor.
¹⁰ iniquis: formed from the adjective *aequus* by prefixing *in*. Compare the words "convenient" and "inconvenient," "equity" and "iniquity."

Consider the genitives in the passage and decide whether the position of each is emphatic or not.

EXERCISE XI

Grammar: A. 400; 401; 423, 2; 500, 4; 504. *b.* B. 214, 1, 2; 181, 1; 337, 8, *b.*, 2; 338, 1, *c.* G. 390, 1; 405; 336; 430; 428, R. 2. H. 462; 417; 622; 626, 3.

Inflection: ostendō: īgnis; tōtus; quī.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the parts of a predicate is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

Prescribed list:

quendam	cōspectū	vīctū	statim
nactus	postquam	postrēmō	cūrāvit
vulnerātō	sublātum	viam	quoque
illīc	tunc	trīduī	beneficī
quidem	operā	dēductus	

ANDROCLUS RELATES HOW HE MET THE WOUNDED LION
AND GAINED ITS AFFECTION

Tum specum quendam nactus remōtum,¹ in eum mē recondō. Neque multō² post ad eundem specum vēnit hīc leō, ūnō pede vulnerātō. Atque illīc prīmō quidem cōspectū³ advenientis⁴ leōnis territus sum; sed postquam intrōgressus⁵ leō mē procul videt, mītis accessit et sublātum pedem ostendere mihi quasi opis petendae causā vīsus est. Ibi stirpem īngentem, pedī eius haerentem, revelli et sine magnō iam metū cruōrem siccāvī. Illā tunc meā operā levātus, pede in manibus meis positō, quīēvit. Ex eō diē triennium⁶ tōtum ego et leō in eōdem specū eōdemque vīctū vīximus. Postrēmō autem reliquī specum et viam ferē trīduī permēsus ā militibus vīsus apprehēsusque sum⁷ et ad dominum ex Āfricā Rōmam⁸ dēductus. Is mē statim damnandum dandumque ad ferās cūrāvit. Intellegō autem hunc quoque leōnem captum grātiam mihi nunc beneficī et medicīnae referre. Haec dixit Androclus; quae cum scrīpta essent circumlātaque populō, omnibus petentibus dīmissus Androclus et poenā solūtus est et leōne dōnātus.⁹

VOCABULARY

specus, ūs, m., <i>cave</i>	levō, 1, <i>relieve</i>
recondō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>hide away</i>	quiēscō, 3, ēvī, ētus, <i>rest</i> (quiet)
terreō, 2, uī, itus, <i>frighten</i>	vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, <i>live</i>
mītis, e, <i>mild</i>	permētiōr, 4, mēnsus, <i>traverse</i>
(ops), opis, f., <i>aid</i>	damnō, 1, <i>condemn</i>
stirps, pis, f., <i>root</i>	medicīna, ae, f., <i>relief</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, <i>write</i> (script)
haereō, 2, haesī, haesus, <i>stick</i>	poena, ae, f., <i>punishment</i>
revellō, 3, vellī, vulsus, <i>tear away</i>	solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus, <i>release</i> (solve)
cruor, ōris, m., <i>blood</i>	
siccō, 1, <i>dry</i>	

NOTES

¹ *remōtum*: notice that this word is made emphatic by separating it from the word which it modifies. ² *multō*: take with *post*, an adverb. ³ *cōspectū*: from *con* + *spec* + *tus*. Give the force of each one of these. ⁴ *advenientis*: note the force of the prefix, *towards*. ⁵ *intrōgressus*: think of *prōgressus*. The prefix *intrō* means *within*. ⁶ *triennium*: from the stems of *trēs* and *annus*. ⁷ *apprehēnsus sum*: from *ad* + *prehendō*. What common English word from this? What meaning has it? ⁸ *Rōmam*: not the object of *dēductus*. ⁹ *dōnātus*: think of a common English word from this, and its meaning.

Observe the force of the prefixes in this passage: *remōtum*, *accessit*, *permēnsus*, *dēductus*, *referre*, *circumlāta*, and others.

EXERCISE XII

Grammar: A. 343; 405; 418; 419; 546. B. 195; 198; 216; 226; 227; 288, I, B. G. 362; 401; 397; 409; 585. H. 440, I; 468; 480; 489; 600, II, I.

Inflection: *patior*; *latus* (noun); *celeriter* (compare); *īdem*.

Order of words: limiting words, when emphatic, usually stand between a preposition and the word which the preposition governs.

Prescribed list:

nōmine	immisit	vulneribus	rettulit
manum	undique	mediīs	statim

THE AFFECTION AND LOYALTY OF A FAMOUS HORSE

Equus Alexandrī rēgis nōmine Būcephalus fuit. Dē hōc equō haec memoriā digna¹ accēpimus. Ubi ōrnātus erat armātusque ad proelium, haud umquam īncendī sēsē² ab aliō nisi ab rēge passus est. Bellō³ Indicō cum īnsidēs in eō Alexander facinora faceret fortia, in hostium manum, nōn satis sibi prōvidēs, immisit. Coniectis undique in Alexandrum tēlis, vulneribus altis in cervice atque in latere equus perfossus est. Moribundus tamen ac prope iam exsanguis ē mediis hostibus rēgem celeriter rettulit atque, ubi eum extrā⁴ tēla extulerat,⁵ statim concidit et animam⁶ exspīrāvit. Tum rēx Alexander, partā eius bellī victōriā, oppidum in iisdem locis condidit idque ob equī honōrēs Būcephalon⁷ appellāvit.

AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

Alexander, drī, m., *Alexander the Great*, king of Macedonia
 dignus, a, um, *worthy*
 ōrnō, 1, *equip* (ornament)
 haud, *not at all*
 umquam, *ever*
 īncendō, 3, scendī, scēsus, *mount*
 īnsidēō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *sit (on)*
 facinus, oris, n., *deed*

cervix, icis, f., *neck*
 perfodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, *pierce through*
 moribundus, a, um, *dying*
 exsanguis, e, *lifeless*
 concidō, 3, cidī, —, *collapse*
 exspīrō, 1, *breathe out*
 pariō, 3, peperī, partus, *achieve*
 condō, 3, didī, ditus, *found*

NOTES

- ¹ digna: followed by the ablative. ² sēsē: for the case, consider the voice of īncendī. ³ bellō: answers the question "when" about faceret.
⁴ extrā: what does the word "extraordinary" mean? What is the force of the prefix? ⁵ extulerat: get the meaning from the two parts of the word.
⁶ animam: synonym of vita, found in the English words "vital," "vitality."
⁷ Būcephalon: accusative singular.

Observe the many words with prefixes in this passage and try to decide what each prefix means.

EXERCISE XIII

Grammar: A. 384; 412; 426, 2, 3; 580. B. 192, 1; 220, 1; 182, 2; 228; 314, 1. G. 359; 399; 416, 1; 418, 1, *a. b.*; 650. H. 434, 2; 473, 3; 418; 483; 642; 643.

Inflection: *fīō*: terra: bonus (compare); *quīdam*.

Order of words: an appositive usually follows the word to which it belongs.

Prescribed list:

accūsāvit	nōmine	adversum	sententiam
mollibus	quaedam	hinc	inde
pāx	tum	āvertit	prōsecūta est

HOW SCIPIO REPELLED THE CHARGE OF HAVING
TAKEN A BRIBE

Mārcus Naevius, tribūnus plēbis, accūsāvit Scipiōnem¹ ad populum, dixitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniam, ut condiciōnibus mollibus pāx cum eō populi Rōmānī nōmine fieret, et quaedam item alia indigna² tāli virō addidit.³ Tum Scipiō pauca praefātus, quae dignitās⁴ vītae suae atque glōria⁵ postulābat, "Memoriā," inquit, "Quirītēs,⁶ repetō,⁷ diem esse hodiernum, quō Hannibalem Poenum, imperiō vestrō inimicissimum,⁸ magnō proeliō in terrā Āfricā vicī, pācemque et victōriam vōbis peperī praeclāram. Nōn igitur sīmus⁹ adversum deōs ingrātī et, cēnseō, relinquāmus nebulōnem hunc, eāmus hinc prōtinus¹⁰ Iovī optimō maximō grātulātum."¹¹ Id cum dixisset, āvertit et ire ad Capitōlium coepit. Tum cōntiō ūniversa, quae ad sententiam dē Scipiōne ferendam convēnerat, relictō tribūnō Scipiōnem in Capitōlium comitāta, atque inde ad aedēs¹² eius cum laetitiā prōsecūta est. — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

plēbs, plēbis, f., <i>common people</i>	(praefor), fārī, fātus, <i>say beforehand</i>
pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money</i> (pecuniary)	vīta, ae, f., <i>life</i> (vital)
tālis, e, <i>such</i>	inquam (defective verb), <i>say</i>

hodiernus, a, um, *to-day's*
 pariō, 3, peperī, partus, *achieve*
 praeclārus, a, um, *famous*
 igitur, *therefore*
 deus, ī, m., *god*
 cēnsēō, 2, uī, us, *propose, move*

nebulō, ōnis, m., *paltry fellow*
 grātulor, ī, *give thanks*
 cōntiō, ōnis, m., *assembly*
 comitor, ī, *accompany*
 laetitia, ae, f., *joy*

NOTES

¹ Scīpiōnem: Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, who defeated Hannibal at Zama. ² indigna: from in + dignus, *worthy*. What is the force of the prefix? Think of "convenient" and "inconvenient." ³ addidit: get the meaning from the English derivative. ⁴ dignitās: from dignus and what suffix? What is the real meaning of the word? ⁵ glōria: think of the English word. ⁶ Quiritēs: *Roman citizens*. ⁷ repetō: derive the meaning from the prefix and the verb. ⁸ inimicissimum: from in + amicus. Compare indignus above. ⁹ sīmus: introduce the translation of this and the following subjunctives by *let*. ¹⁰ prōtinus: synonym of statim. ¹¹ grātulātum: notice that this looks like a participle, but does not agree with any other word. It shows purpose. ¹² aedēs: synonym of domus.

Note the position of the appositives in the passage.

EXERCISE XIV

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 405; 409; 531, 1; 580. B. 201, 2; 216; 218; 282, 1; 314, 1. G. 369; 401; 545, 1, 3; 650. H. 441; 468; 476; 568; 642; 643.

Inflection: doceō; domus; omnis; is.

Order of words: indefinite pronouns are usually unemphatic and follow their nouns.

Prescribed list:

locūtus erat	cōnspicimus	propinqua	praefectus
familiārēs	quandam	vēndidissem	turrim
prōsequēbāmur	ēditam	ēmissem	latere
subeuntēs	īgnī	docuisset	

HOW TO MAKE BUILDINGS FIREPROOF

Locūtus erat Antōnius Iūliānus rhētor fēlicissimē eumque nōs, familiārēs¹ eius, prōsequēbāmur domum, cum subeuntēs montem Cispium² cōnspicimus insulam³ quandam, multīs altisque tabulātis

ēditam, ignī occupātam⁴ et propinqua iam omnia flagrāre vāstō incendiō.⁵ Tum quispiam⁶ ibi ex comitibus Iūliānī, "Magnī," inquit, "reditūs⁷ urbānōrum praediōrum, sed pericula sunt longē maxima. Si quid autem posset remedi⁸ esse, nē domūs Rōmae ārdērent, vēdidissem⁹ rēs rūsticās et urbicās¹⁰ ēmissem." Atque illi Iūliānus, "Si annālem," inquit, "ūndēvicēsimum Quīnti Claudī lēgissēs, docuisset tē profectō Archelāus, rēgis Mithridātī¹¹ praefectus, quō¹² remediō ignem dēfenderēs. In eō enim librō scriptum invēni,¹³ cum oppugnāret Lūcius Sulla in terrā Atticā Piraeum et contrā Archelāus, rēgis Mithridātī praefectus, ex eō oppidō prōpugnāret,¹⁴ turrim ligneam dēfendendī causā strūctam, ex omnī latere circumplexam ignī, ārdēre nōn potuisse, quod alūmine ab Archelāo oblita fuisset."¹⁵ — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

rhētor, oris, m., *teacher of oratory*
 fēliciter, *happily*
 tabulātum, ī, n., *floor, story*
 flagrō, 1, *be on fire*
 vāstus, a, um, *enormous*
 comes, itis, m. f., *companion*
 inquam (defective verb), *say*
 urbānus, a, um, *of the city (urbane)*
 praedium, praedi, n., *estate*
 ārdēō, 2. ārsī, ārsūrus, *burn (ardent)*
 rūsticus, a, um, *of the country*
 annālis, is, m., *chronicle*
 ūndēvicēsimus, a, um, *nineteenth*

legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *read*
 profectō, *assuredly*
 liber, librī, m., *book*
 scribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus, *write*
 (scribe)
 ligneus, a, um, *wooden*
 struō, 3, strūxī, strūctus, *erect*
 (structure)
 circumplectō, 3, —, plexus, *en-*
circle
 alūmen, inis, n., *alum*
 oblinō, 3, lēvī, litus, *smear*

NOTES

- ¹ familiārēs: used as a noun. ² Cispiūm: a part of the Esquiline hill.
³ insulam: *tenement building*. ⁴ occupātam: supply esse. ⁵ incendiō:
 from the verb incendō and the suffix ium, showing action. ⁶ quispiam:
 synonym of aliquis. ⁷ reditūs: noun from the verb redeō. ⁸ remedi:
 genitive. Get the meaning from the English derivative. ⁹ vēdidissem:
 this is in the conclusion of an unreal condition. ¹⁰ urbicās: synonym of

urbānus. ¹¹ *Mithridāti*: genitive. Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. ¹² *quō*: interrogative; this clause is the second object of *docuisset*. ¹³ *invēni*: *in + veniō*, *come upon*. ¹⁴ *prōpugnāret*: note the prefix and its force. ¹⁵ *fuisset*: used instead of *esset*.

Think of English words from *locūtus erat*, *rhētor*, *cōnspicimus*, *īnsulam*, *rēgis*, *īgnem*.

EXERCISE XV

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 384; 456; 530; 531, 1; 568. B. 201, 1; 192, 1; 328, 1; 282, 1; 297, 1. G. 369; 359; 423, 1, 2; 545, 1, 3; 553, 1. H. 442; 434, 2; 607, 1; 568; 566.

Inflection: *possum*; *filius*; *dulcis*; *hīc*.

Order of words: possessive adjectives, unless emphatic, stand after their nouns.

Prescribed list:

frātris	redeō	efficiam	oportet
liberis	experior	dēbeō	aequō
quaererem	studiis	enim	subīre
beneficiō	sentiam	suscipiendās	

PLINY WRITES TO A FRIEND ON THE CHOICE OF A BOYS' SCHOOL

Quid iūcundius mihi esse potuit quam ut praeceptōrem frātris tui liberis quaererem? Nam beneficiō¹ tuō in scholam redeō et illam dulcissimam aetātem quasi² resūmō.³ Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis ex studiis habeam. Cum omnis quī profitentur audierō, quid dē quōque sentiam scribam,⁴ efficiamque, quantum tamen epistolā cōsequi poterō, ut ipse omnis audisse videāris. Dēbeō enim tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tui hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim super tantā rē. Nam quid magis interest vestrā⁵ quam ut liberi digni illō⁶ patre, tē patruō reperiantur? Nec ignōrō suscipiendās offēnsās in eligendō praeceptōre, sed oportet mē nōn modo offēnsās vērūm etiam similtātēs prō frātris tui filiis tam aequō animō subīre quam parentēs prō suis.⁷ Valē. — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

iūundus, a, um, <i>pleasant</i>	scribō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, <i>write</i> (scripture)
praeceptor, ōris, m., <i>teacher</i>	epistula, ae, f., <i>letter</i>
schola, ae, f., <i>school</i>	dignus, a, um, <i>worthy</i>
aetās, ātis, f., <i>age</i>	patruus, ī, m., <i>uncle</i>
sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessum, <i>sit</i>	ignōrō, 1, <i>be unaware</i> (ignorant)
iuvenis, is, m., f., <i>youth</i> (juvenile)	offēnsa, ae, f., <i>inconvenience</i>
soleō, 2, solitus, <i>be accustomed</i>	ēligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>select</i>
profiteor, 2, fessus, <i>be a teacher</i>	simultās, ātis, f., <i>jealousy</i>

NOTES

¹ *beneficiō*: shows cause, *thanks to*. ² *quasi*: *as it were*. ³ *resūmō*: from *re* + *sūmō*. Give an English verb from this word. ⁴ *scribam*: the preceding clause is its object. ⁵ *interest vestrā*: *concerns you*. *Vestrā* is the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun, governed by *interest*. ⁶ *illō*: the ablative follows *dignus*. *Patre* is an appositive of *illō*. ⁷ *suīs*: understand *filīis*.

EXERCISE XVI

Grammar: A. 419; 420, 1; 423, 2; 427, 2, 3. B. 227, 2, *a*; 181, 1; 182, 1, *a*; 228, 1, *a*. G. 409; 410; 336; 337; 386. H. 489, 1; 417; 491, II, 1, 3.

Inflection: *sequor*; *mors*; *tōtus*; *ille*.

Order of words: the place of emphasis in the clause or sentence is usually the beginning.

Prescribed list:

ācrius	manibus	vigiliam	manēbat
strepitus	catēnās	quoque	pretiō
deinde	inde	discesserat	condūcit
cōnfectus			

ATHENODORUS HIRES A HAUNTED HOUSE

Erat Athēnis spatiōsa¹ et capāx² domus, sed infāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium³ noctis sonus ferrī et, sī attenderēs⁴ ācrius, strepitus vinculōrum, longius primō, deinde ē proximō, audiēbātur; mox appārēbat idōlon, senex maciē et squālōre cōnfectus, prōmissā

barbā, manibus catēnās gerēbat quatiēbatque.⁵ Inde inhabitantēs trīstis noctis per metum⁶ vigilābant. Vigiliam morbus et, crēscēte⁷ metū, mors sequēbātur. Nam interdiū quoque, quamquam disceserat imāgō, memoria imāginis manēbat. Dēserta inde erat domus et tōta illi mōnstrō relicta. Vēnit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus, vīdit titulum, auditōque pretiō omnia cognōvit ac nihilōminus⁸ eam condūcit.⁹ — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

īnfāmis, e, *of ill repute*

pestilēns, entis, *unhealthy*

sonus, ī, m., *sound*

ferrum, ī, n., *iron*

vinculum, ī, n., *fetter*

mox, *soon*

appāreō, 2, uī, —, *appear*

īdōlon, ī, n., *ghost*

senex, senis, m., *old man*

maciēs, ēī, f., *leanness*

squālor, ōris, m., *filth*

prōmittō, 3, mīsī, missus, *let grow*

barba, ae, f., *beard*

quatiō, 3, —, quassus, *shake*

trīstis, e, *sad*

vigilō, 1, *keep awake* (vigil)

morbus, ī, m., *sickness* (morbid)

interdiū, *by day*

quamquam, *although*

titulus, ī, m., *placard* "for rent"

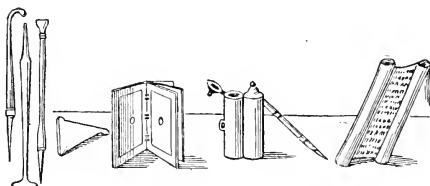
NOTES

¹ spatiōsa: spatium + ōsus, *full of*. ² capāx: synonym of magnus. English derivative? ³ silentium: think of the English derivative.

⁴ attenderēs: see note on silentium. ⁵ quatiēbat: all the verbs thus far are in this tense. Why? ⁶ metum: synonym of timor. ⁷ crēscēte: synonym of augeor.

⁸ nihilōminus: nihil + minus. ⁹ condūcit: *rents*.

From many of the words in the passage are derived common English words. Make a list.



WRITING MATERIALS

EXERCISE XVII

Grammar: A. 384; 401; 409; 412; 506; 563. B. 192, 1; 214, 1, *c*; 218; 220, 1; 338, 3; 295, 1. G. 359; 405; 401; 399; 432, R.; 546, 1. H. 434, 2; 462; 476; 473, 3; 628; 565.

Inflection: *eō*: locus; posterus (compare); ipse.

Order of words: a word, phrase, or clause is more likely to limit a word which follows it than one which precedes it.

Prescribed list

poscit	initiō	intrā	adiit
vacua	tollere	respicit	postea
fingeret	appropinquāre	morātus	

ATHENODORUS CAUSES THE GHOST TO DEPART FROM
THE HAUNTED HOUSE

Ubi coepit advesperāscere,¹ Athēnodōrus poscit pugillārēs, stilum, lūmen²; suōs omnis in interiōra dimittit; ipse ad scribendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit, nē vacua mēns³ sibi metūs fingeret. Initiō silentium⁴ noctis; deinde concuti ferrum, vincula movērī. Ille nōn tollere oculōs, nōn remittere stilum. Tum crēscere strepitus, appropinquāre et iam ut in limine, iam ut intrā limen audiri. Respicit, videt nārrātam sibi imāginem. Stābat innuēbatque digitō similis vocantī.⁵ Athēnodōrus nōn morātus tollit lūmen et sequitur. Ībat illa⁶ lentō gradū⁷ quasi gravis vinculis in āream domūs, repente dilāpsa dēserit comitem. Dēsertus herbās⁸ et folia coācta signum locō pōnit. Posterō diē adiit magistrātus, monet ut illum locum effodī iubeant. Inveniuntur⁹ ossa inserta catēnis; collēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur. Domus postea mōnstrō caruit. — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

pugillārēs, ium, m., <i>writing tablets</i>	intendō, 3, tendī, tentus, <i>direct</i>
stilus, ī, m., <i>stylus, used for writing</i>	(intention)
scribō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, <i>write</i>	concutiō, 3, cussī, cussus, <i>shake</i>
oculus, ī, m., <i>eye (oculist)</i>	(concussion)

vinculum, ī, n., *fetter*
 limen, inis, n., *threshold*
 stō, 1. steti, statum, *stand*
 innuō, 3. nuī, nūtum, *beckon*
 digitus, ī, m., *finger*
 vocō, 1. *call* (vocation)
 lentus, a, um, *slow*
 gradus, ūs, m., *step* (grade)
 quasi, *as if*

ārea, ae, f., *court*
 repente, *suddenly*
 dilābor, 3. lāpsus, *glide away*
 comes, itis, m., f., *companion*
 folium, folī, n., *leaf*
 effodiō, 3. fōdī, fossus, *dig up*
 ōs, ossis, n., *bone* (ossify)
 sepeliō, 4. ivī, sepultus, *bury*
 careō, 2. uī, itūrus, *be free from*

NOTES

¹ *advesperāscere*: from *ad* + the stem found in *vesper* + *scō*, which denotes that the action is beginning. ² *lūmen*: synonym of *lūx*. ³ *mēns*: synonym of *animus*. ⁴ *silentium*: English derivative? ⁵ *vocantī*: take with *similis* and think of it as having the force of a noun. ⁶ *illa*: refers to *imāginem*. ⁷ *gradū*: answers the question "how" about *ibat*. ⁸ *herbās*: *turf*. ⁹ *inveniuntur*: *in* + *veniō*, *come upon*.

Observe that several of the principal verbs in the passage, such as *concutī*, are in the infinitive mood. This adds vividness and an air of animation to the narrative. They should be translated by the indicative mood. The infinitive thus used is called the historical infinitive. Observe also the omission of conjunctions.

EXERCISE XVIII

Grammar: A. 496: 540; 546: 580: 585. B. 337. 2. *a, f*; 286, 1; 288, 1, B; 314, 1; 318. G. 665; 666; 541; 585; 650; 654. H. 638, 1; 588, I, II; 600, II, 1; 642; 643; 644.

Inflection: *reperiō*; *iter*; *alter*; *īdem*.

Order of words: temporal clauses usually precede, and purpose clauses usually follow, the verb on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

crēberrimē	redisse	hospitium	portam
ignōtum	trāditum	ōrāre	priusquam
quendam	ūnā	quoniam	quaesisse
cōnscendere	hospitem	paterētur	fūgisse
nāvigasset			

TWO STRANGE DREAMS, THROUGH ONE OF WHICH A
CRIME WAS DETECTED AND PUNISHED

Duo somnia crēberrimē commemorantur: ūnum dē Simōnide, quī,¹ cum ignōtum quendam prōiectum mortuum vidisset eumque humāvisset habēretque in animō nāvem cōnscendere, monērī vīsus est nē id faceret ab eō quem sepultūrā affēcerat; sī nāvīgāssset,² eum naufragiō esse peritūrum. Itaque Simōnidem redisse³; perisse cēterōs,⁴ quī tum nāvīgāssent.

Alterum ita trāditum est.⁵ Cum duo quīdam Arcades⁶ familiārēs iter ūnā facerent et Megaram⁷ vēnissent, alterum ad caupōnem dēvertisse,⁸ ad hospitem alterum. Vīsum esse⁹ in somnīs¹⁰ eī quī erat in hospitiō¹¹ illum alterum ōrāre ut subveniret, quod¹² sibi ā caupōne interitus¹³ parārētur; eum primō perterritum somniō surrēxisse; dein¹⁴ cum sē collēgisset idque vīsum prō nihilō habendum esse dūxisset,¹⁵ recubuisse. Tum eī dormienti eundem illum vīsum esse rogāre ut, quoniam sibi¹⁶ vīvō nōn subvēnisset, mortem suam nē inultam¹⁷ esse paterētur; sē interfectum in plaustrum ā caupōne esse coniectum; petere ut māne ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppidō exiret. Hōc somniō eum commōtum, māne ad portam fuisse, quaesisse ex bubulcō quid esset in plaustrō; illum perterritum fūgisse, mortuum repertum esse; caupōnem, rē patefactā,¹⁸ poenās dedisse. — CICERO

VOCABULARY

somnium, somnī, n., *dream*
 commemorō, ī, *relate*
 morior, 3, mortuus, *die* (mortal)
 humō, ī, *bury*
 sepultūra, ae, f., *burial*
 naufragium, naufra'gī, n., *wreck*
 pereō, 4, iī, itūrus, *perish*
 caupō, ōnis, m., *innkeeper*
 subveniō, 4, vēnī, ventum, *come to the aid of*

surgō, 3, surrēxī, surrēctus, *rise* (surge)
 colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *collect*
 recumbō, 3, cubuī, —, *lie down again*
 dormiō, 4, īvī, itum, *sleep* (dormant)
 plaustrum, ī, n., *cart*
 māne, *early*
 adsum, esse, fui, —, *be at hand*
 bubulcus, ī, m., *ploughman*

NOTES

¹ *quī*: take with *visus est*. ² *nāvigāisset*: indirect discourse dependent on *monēri*. ³ *redisse*: indirect discourse dependent on *commemorantur*. ⁴ *cēterōs*: synonym of *reliquī*. ⁵ *trāditum est*: the story is told in indirect discourse dependent on this verb. ⁶ *Arcades*: *Greeks*. ⁷ *Megaram*: a town in Greece. ⁸ *dēvertisse*: *dē + vertō*. ⁹ *visum esse*: the principal verb in the sentence. ¹⁰ *somnīs*: synonym of *somniūs*. ¹¹ *hospitiō*: i. e. in his friend's house. ¹² *quod*: *because*. ¹³ *interitus*: synonym of *mors*. ¹⁴ *dein*: = *deinde*. ¹⁵ *dūxisset*: *had considered*. ¹⁶ *sibi*: for the case, consider *subvēnisset*. ¹⁷ *inultam*: compare *ulciscor* and *in*, as in "inconvenient." ¹⁸ *patefactā*: *pateō + faciō*.

Study the use of the pronouns in the passage, and observe to which one of the three characters in the story each refers.

EXERCISE XIX

Grammar: A. 346; 367; 384; 580. B. 187, II, *a*: 192, 1; 314, 1. G. 346; 359; 650. H. 426, 1; 434, 2; 642; 643.

Inflection: *possum*; *gēns*; *nūllus*; *quī*.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is: (1) subject; (2) modifiers of subject; (3) modifiers of verb; (4) verb. Changes in this order are due to emphasis.

Prescribed list:

paucōs	veterēs	ultimus	caput
statim	corpus	excēdēbat	stīpendiō
convertit	statiōnēs	meruit	impositō
redditum esse	peditum	statuit	

THE CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL AND HIS ACTIVITY
IN SPAIN

Hannibal¹ post primum Pūnicum² bellum blandiēbat patri Hamilcarī ut in Hispāniam dūceretur. Dixit sē hostem futūrum esse populō Rōmānō. Post paucōs annōs missus est Hannibal in Hispāniam. Statim omnem exercitum in sē convertit. Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum esse sibi³ veterēs militēs crēdidērunt. Et imperātōri⁴ et exercituī cārus erat. Nūllō labōre aut corpus fatigārī⁵

aut animus vincī poterat. Multī saepe humī⁶ eum iacentem inter stationēs militum vidērunt. Equitum peditumque longē prīmus erat. Prīnceps in proelium ibat,⁷ ultimus ē proeliō excēdēbat. Trīs annōs sub Hasdrubale⁸ imperātōre meruit. Ex quō diē Hannibal dux dēclārātus est, Saguntīnis⁹ bellum inferre statuit. In Olcadum prius finis exercitum dūxit. Cartalam, caput gentis eius, expugnāvit. Minōrēs civitatēs, stipendiō impositō, imperium accēpērunt. Victor exercitus Carthāginem Novam in hiberna dēductus est. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

blandiō, 4, īvī, ītus, *coax*iuvenis, is, m., f., *youth* (juvenile)crēdō, 3, didī, dītus, *believe*cārus, a, um, *dear*humus, ī, m., *ground*iaceō, 2, uī, —, *lie*

NOTES

¹ **Hannibal**: famous leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war.
² **Pūnicum**: *Punic*. ³ **sibi**: refers to the subject of the principal verb.
⁴ **imperātōri**: imperō + tor. ⁵ **fatīgārī**: English derivative? ⁶ **humī**: locative.
⁷ **ibat**: this tense expresses a customary action. ⁸ **Hasdrubale**: Hannibal's brother-in-law.
⁹ **Saguntīnis**: people of Saguntum, a large city of Spain. For the case, consider **inferre**.

The passage contains variations from the normal order of the sentence. Account for them.

EXERCISE XX

Grammar: A. 402; 506; 540; 546; 563. B. 214, 2; 338, 3; 286, 1; 288, 1, B; 295, 1. G. 390, 2; 432, R.; 540; 585; 546, 1. H. 464; 628; 588, I; 600, II, 1; 565.

Inflection: ferō; agmen; gravis; hīc.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the parts of a predicate is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

Prescribed list:

vī	aquam	cessisse	nōndum
adortī	quadrāgintā	sublātō	ōrārent
praedā	autem	prīusquam	tunc
rīpam	dispōnit	praeter	sententia

HANNIBAL SUBDUES MANY MORE OF THE TRIBES
OF SPAIN

Prīmō vēre in Vaccaeōs prōmōtum est¹ bellum. Hermandica et Arbocala, eōrum urbēs, vī captae sunt. Arbocala et virtūte et multitudine oppidānōrum² diū dēfēnsa est. Ab Hermandicā profugī concitant Carpētānōs et Hannibalem adorti haud procul Tagō flūmine agmen grave praedā³ turbāvērunt. Hannibal proeliō abstinuit, castrisque super rīpam positīs, flūmen vadō trāiēcit.⁴ Equitibus monuit ut, cum hostīs ingressōs⁵ aquam vidērent, adorirentur impeditum agmen. In rīpā elephantōs, quadrāgintā autem erant, dispōnit. Hostēs, quod metū⁶ cessisse crēdēbant Rōmānōs, clāmōre sublātō, sine ūllius imperiō in flūmen ruunt. Pars magna flūmine absūmpta est. Priusquam postrēmī ā tantō timōre reciperent animōs, Hannibal fugam ex rīpā fēcit vāstātisque agrīs intrā paucōs diēs hanc gentem quoque in dēditiōnem accēpit. Et iam omnia trāns Hibērum⁷ praeter Saguntinōs Carthāginiēnsium⁸ erant. Cum Saguntinīs bellum nōndum erat. Lēgātī ā Saguntinīs Rōmam missī sunt. Cōsulēs tunc Rōmae erant Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō et Tiberius Semprōnius Longus. Cum lēgātī auxilium ad bellum iam imminēns ōrārent, Saguntum oppugnārī nūntiātum est. Tunc relāta est dē integrō⁹ rēs ad senātum. Hae sententia, quae optima vidēbātur, vicit, lēgātique Saguntum ad Hannibalem missī sunt atque inde Carthāginem, sī nōn absisterēt¹⁰ bellō, ad ducem ipsum dēposcendum.¹¹ — LIVY

VOCABULARY

vēr, vēris, n., <i>spring</i> (vernal)	ingredior, 3, gressus, <i>enter</i>
profugus, ī, m., <i>exile</i>	crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>believe</i> (credit)
concitō, 1, <i>arouse</i>	ruō, 3, ruī, rutilus, <i>rush</i>
haud, <i>not, not at all</i>	absūmō, 3, sūmptī, sūmptus, <i>destroy</i>
procul, <i>far</i>	immineō, 2, uī, —, <i>threaten</i> (imminent)
turbō, 1, <i>throw into confusion</i>	integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh, whole</i> (integer)
abstineō, 2, uī, tentus, <i>refrain</i>	absistō, 3, stitī, —, <i>cease</i>
super, <i>upon</i>	

NOTES

¹ *prōmōtum est*: *prō* + *moveō*. ² *oppidānōrum*: from *oppidum* and the suffix *ānus*, *belonging to*. ³ *praedā*: take with grave. ⁴ *trāiēcit*: derivation? A synonym of *trānseō*. ⁵ *ingressōs*: understand *esse*. ⁶ *metū*: synonym of *timor*. It answers the question "why" about *cessisse*. ⁷ *Hibērum*: the largest river of northeastern Spain. ⁸ *Carthāginiēnsium*: the suffix is *ēnsis*, *belonging to*. A predicate genitive showing possession. ⁹ *dē integrō*: used adverbially. Compare *dē imprōvisō*. ¹⁰ *absisterētur*: used impersonally. ¹¹ *dēposcendum*: = *poscendum*. This was to be done in order that he might be punished for breaking the treaty.

EXERCISE XXI

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 2; 370; 412; 546. B. 201, 1; 187, 3; 220, 1; 288, 1, B. G. 369; 347; 399; 585. H. 442; 429; 473, 3; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: *agō*: *turris*; *graviter* (compare); *is*.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

Prescribed list:

dum	succēdēbat	vulnerātus	coortum est
ultrā	dēlēcta	obsidiō	anceps
aggreditur	certāmine	cūrārētur	expellunt
adversus	cadēbant	operum	redigunt
vīneās			

THE FIERCE ATTACK ON SAGUNTUM, IN WHICH
HANNIBAL IS WOUNDED

Dum ea Rōmānī parant cōsultantque, iam Saguntum summā vī oppugnābātur. Civitās ea longē opulentissima ultrā Hibērum fuit. Hannibal, agris vāstātis, urbem aggreditur. Adversus angulum mūrī vīneās agere instituit, per quās ariēs moenibus¹ admovērī² posset.³ Nōn prōsperē⁴ autem coeptis⁵ succēdēbant. Et turris ingēns imminēbat, et mūrus suprā cēterae⁶ modum⁷ altitudinis mūnitus erat, et iuventūs dēlēcta, ubi plūrimum periculī ac timōris ostendēbātur, ibi vī maiōre obsistēbat. In hōc certāmine haud ferē⁸ plūrēs Saguntinī cadēbant quam Poenī. Hannibal ipse adversum

femur trāgulā graviter vulnerātus cecidit. Obsidiō per paucōs diēs magis quam oppugnātiō fuit,⁹ dum¹⁰ vulnus ducis cūrārētur. Per quod tempus ut¹¹ quiēs certāminum erat, ita¹¹ ab apparātū operum ae mūnitiōnum nihil¹² cessātum est. Itaque ācrius dē integrō¹³ coortum est bellum. Multae partēs mūrī quassātae erant. Trēs turrēs quantumque inter eās mūrī erat cum fragōre ingenti prōcidērunt.¹⁴ Cum diū anceps fuisset certāmen, clāmōrem repente oppidānī¹⁵ tollunt hostemque in ruinās mūrī expellunt et postrēmō in castra redigunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

opulentus, a, um, <i>wealthy</i>	femur, feminis, n., <i>thigh</i>
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	trāgula, ae, f., <i>dart</i>
angulus, ī, m., <i>corner</i>	apparātus, ūs, m., <i>preparation</i>
ariēs, etis, m., <i>battering-ram</i>	cessō, ī, <i>cease</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh</i>
immineō, 2, uī, —, <i>overhang</i>	quassō, ī, <i>shake</i>
suprā, <i>beyond</i>	fragor, ōris, m., <i>crash</i>
iuventūs, ūtis, f., <i>youth</i>	repente, <i>suddenly</i>
obsistō, 3, stitī, stitus, <i>stand in the way</i>	

NOTES

- ¹ moenibus: synonym of mūrus. For the case consider admovēri.
² admovēri: ad + moveō. ³ posset: shows the purpose of instituit.
⁴ prōspērē: English derivative? ⁵ coeptis: participle of coepī used as a noun.
⁶ cēterae: synonym of reliquus. ⁷ modum: limit. ⁸ haud ferē: hardly.
⁹ fuit: *it was*. ¹⁰ dum: with the subjunctive, *until*. ¹¹ ut, ita: cor-relatives. ¹² nihil: adverbial accusative of degree. ¹³ dē integrō: used adverbially. Compare dē imprōvisō.
¹⁴ prōcidērunt: prō + cadō. ¹⁵ oppidānī: from oppidum and the suffix ānus, *belonging to*.

Make a list of the phrases consisting of a noun and limiting genitive, and determine the emphatic word in each phrase.

EXERCISE XXII

Grammar: A. 404; 412; 531, 1; 540; 549. B. 219; 220, 1; 282, 1; 286, 1, 2. G. 408; 399; 545, 1; 540; 586. H. 475; 473, 3; 568; 588, 1; 598.

Inflection: respondeō; opus; minor; suus.

Order of words: the limiting word usually precedes the word which it limits, unless the latter is emphatic.

Prescribed list:

nūntius	vetus	adorta est	minuitur
lēgatiō	aliquot	simul	paulisper
inde	reficerent	inopia	profectiō
ortum	oppugnātiō	obsidiō	oppressi

HANNIBAL FORESTALLS THE ROMAN EMBASSY AND
THEN ATTACKS SAGUNTUM

Interim Rōmā lēgātōs vēnisse nūntiātum est. Appārēbat¹ eōs ab Hannibale nōn admissōs² prōtinus³ Carthāginem itūrōs esse. Litterās igitur⁴ nūntiōsque ad prīncipēs factiōnis⁵ Barcīnae⁶ praemittit Hannibal ut praeparent suōrum animōs. Itaque, praeterquam quod⁷ admissi auditique sunt, ea quoque vāna⁸ lēgatiō fuit. Hannō ūnus adversus senātum causam foederis magnō silentiō propter auctōritātem suam nōn cum adsēnsū⁹ audientium ēgit. Respōnsum inde lēgātis Rōmānis est, bellum ortum ab Saguntīnīs, nōn ab Hannibale esse; populum Rōmānum iniūstē¹⁰ facere, si Saguntīnōs vetustissimae Carthāginiēnsium societāti praepōnat.¹¹ Hannibal, quia fessōs¹² militēs proeliis operibusque habēbat, paucōrum iis diērum quiētem dedit. Saguntīni ut ā proeliis quiētem habuerant per aliquot diēs, ita nōn nocte, nōn diē umquam cessāverant ab opere, ut novum mūrū ab eā parte quā patefactum¹³ oppidum erat reficerent. Inde oppugnātiō ācrior quam ante eōs adorta est. Utrimque summā vī et mūniunt et pugnant; sed interiōra¹⁴ tuendō minōrem in diēs¹⁵ urbem Saguntīnī faciunt. Simul crēscit¹⁶ inopia omnium longā obsidiōne et minuitur exspectātiō externae opis, cum

tam procul Rōmānī, ūnica¹⁷ spēs, essent. Paulisper tamen animōs recreāvīt¹⁸ repentina profectiō Hannibalis in Ōrētānōs Carpētānōsque, quī duo populī oppressī eius celeritāte omīsērunt mōta arma. Postrēmō ad ipsam arcem ductus est exercitus, atrōxque proelium cum multōrum utrimque caede¹⁹ initum²⁰ et pars arcis capta est. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

appāreō, 2, uī, —, *appear* (apparent)
 praeterquam, *except*
 foedus, eris, n., *treaty*
 silentium, silentī, n., *silence*
 umquam, *ever*
 cessō, 1, *cease*
 tueor, 2, tuitus or tūtus, *protect*

urbs, urbis, f., *city* (suburban)
 (ops), opis, f., *aid*
 procul, *far away*
 repentīnus, a, um, *sudden*
 omittō, 3, mīsī, missus, *give up*
 arx, arcis, f., *citadel*
 atrōx, atrōcis, *dreadful* (atrocious)

NOTES

¹ appārēbat: impersonal. ² admissōs: English derivative? ³ prōtinus: synonym of statim. ⁴ igitur: synonym of itaque. ⁵ factiōnis: English derivative? ⁶ Barcīnae: adjective. The Barca family, to which Hannibal belonged, was the most powerful in Carthage. ⁷ quod: *the fact that*. ⁸ vāna: synonym of vacuus. ⁹ adsēnsū: ad + sentiō + tus. English derivative? ¹⁰ iniūstē: adverb. ¹¹ praepōnat: prae, *before*.
¹² fessōs: = dēfessōs. ¹³ patefactum: pateō + faciō. ¹⁴ interiōra: object of tuendō. ¹⁵ in diēs: *day by day*. ¹⁶ crēscit: think of the meaning of augeō. Crēscō is intransitive. ¹⁷ ūnica: synonym of sōlus. ¹⁸ recreāvīt: re + creō, here *restore*. ¹⁹ caede: from the stem of caedō, *kill*.
²⁰ initum: understand est.

Find examples in the passage for the rules on the order of words.

EXERCISE XXIII

Grammar: A. 483; 484, 1, 2; 546; 584; 585. B. 267, 1, 2; 288, 1, B; 317; 270, 1, a, b, c; 318. G. 509, 1; 510; 585; 530; 531; 654. H. 543; 544; 545, I, II; 600, II, 1; 644.

Inflection: temptō; rēs; adfirmāns; suī.

Order of words: when a noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive, the order often is adjective, genitive, noun, the precise arrangement being determined by emphasis.

Prescribed list:

postquam	redderent	hospitiō	adimit
lacrimae	concursum	adferō	inermēs
mānsit	generis	aliquis	bīnīs

ALCO AND ALORCUS TRY TO BRING ABOUT PEACE
THE SPEECH OF ALORCUS

Temptāta deinde per duōs est exigua¹ pācis spēs, Alcōnem Saguntinum et Alorcum Hispānum. Alcō, cum ad Hannibalem noctū trānsisset, postquam nihil lacrimae movēbant, trānsfuga ex orātōre² factus, apud hostem mānsit, eum³ moritūrum esse adfirmāns quī sub condiōnibus iis dē pāce ageret. Postulābātur autem redderent⁴ rēs Turdētānis,⁵ trāditōque omnī aurō atque argentō, ēgressi urbe ibi habitārent⁶ ubi Poenus iussisset. Alorcus sē pācis eius interpretem fore pollicetur. Erat autem tum miles Hannibalis, sed pūblicē Saguntinis amicus. Cum concursus omnis generis⁷ hominum esset factus, senātus Alorcō datus est, cuius tālis orātiō fuit: "Ego prō vetustō⁸ hospitiō, quod mihi⁹ vōbiscum est, ad vōs vēnī. Neque dum vestrīs vīribus restitistis neque dum auxilia ab Rōmānis spērāstis, pācis apud vōs mentiōnem fēcī. Postquam nec ab Rōmānis vōbis ūlla est spēs nec vestra vōs iam aut arma aut moenia¹⁰ satis dēfendunt, pācem adferō ad vōs magis necessāriam quam aequam. Cuius¹¹ ita aliqua spēs est, si eam, quem ad modum ut victor fert¹² Hannibal, sic vōs ut victi audiētis. Urbem, quam captam ferē tōtam habet, adimit, agrōs relinquit. Aurum et argentum omne pūblicum prīvātumque ad sē iubet dēferri. Corpora vestra, coniugum, ac liberōrum vestrōrum servat inviolāta, si inermēs cum bīnīs vestimentis velitis ab Saguntō exire. Haec victor hostis imperat; haec, quamquam sunt gravia, fortūna vestra vōbis suādet. Equidem haud dēspērō,¹³ cum omnium potestās eī facta sit, aliquid ex his rēbus remissūrum." — LIVY

VOCABULARY

trānsfuga, ae, m., f., <i>deserter</i>	servō, 1, <i>preserve</i>
morior, morī, mortuus, <i>die</i>	vestimentum, ī, n., <i>garment</i>
aurum, ī, n., <i>gold</i>	suādeō, 2, suāsī, suāsum, <i>advise</i>
argentum, ī, n., <i>silver</i>	quamquam, <i>although</i>
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	equidem, <i>indeed</i>
interpres, etis, m., f., <i>messenger</i>	haud, <i>not</i>
coniunx, ugis, m., f., <i>husband, wife</i>	

NOTES

¹ *exigua*: synonym of *parvus*. ² *ōrātōre*: *ōrō* + *tor*. English derivative?
³ *eum*: *that man*. ⁴ *redderent*: understand *ut*. ⁵ *Turdētānis*: a tribe in southwestern Spain. ⁶ *habitārent*: think of an English derivative with a prefix. ⁷ *generis*: genitive of quality. ⁸ *vetustō*: synonym of *vetus*.
⁹ *mihi*: dative of the possessor. Translate into English by the nominative case, and render *est* by the appropriate form of *have*. ¹⁰ *moenia*: synonym of *mūrus*. ¹¹ *cuius*: its antecedent is *pācem*. ¹² *fert*: *offers*.
¹³ *dēspērō*: *dē* + *spērō*.

In the following phrases determine the reason for the position of each word: *exigua pācis spēs*; *trādītō omni aurō*; *pācis eius interpretem*; *concursum omnis generis hominum*; *vōbīs ūlla est spēs*.

EXERCISE XXIV

Grammar: A. 413; 531; 537, 1; 573; 574. B. 222; 282, 1; 284, 1; 300, 1. G. 392; 543, 1; 545, 1; 452, 2; 467. H. 473, 1; 568; 570; 649. II.

Inflection: *dēfendō*; *vīs*; *magis* (compare); *ipse*.

Order of words: a relative clause usually follows the clause which contains the antecedent of the relative.

Prescribed list:

priusquam	rettulērunt	peditum	marī
respondeō	summā	octingentī	sescentīs
aggressus	cōnsulerent	centum	comparātīs
praedā	ēvēnit	sexāgintā	dīmicitūrum
redierant	sēdecim	maritimus	

THE FALL OF SAGUNTUM ALARMS THE ROMANS AND
AROUSES THEM TO GREATER ACTIVITY

Priusquam respōsum¹ darētur, tumultus ex arce auditur. Turris diū quassāta prōciderat,² perque ruīnam eius Hannibal tōtis viribus aggressus urbem mōmentō³ capit,⁴ signō datō ut omnēs pūberēs interficerentur. Captum oppidum est cum īgentī praedā. Sub idem ferē tempus et lēgātī, quī redierant ab Carthāgine, Rōmam rettulērunt omnia hostilia⁵ esse, et Saguntī excidium nūntiātum est; tantaque īra in Carthāginiēnsis metusque⁶ dē summā rērum cēpit, ut animī turbāti timērent magis quam cōsulerent. Nōminātae iam antēa cōsulibus prōvinciae erant.⁷ Cornēliō⁸ Hispānia, Semprōniō Āfrica cum Siciliā ēvēnit. Inter cōsulēs ita cōpiae divīsaē: Semprōniō datae legiōnēs duae et sociōrum sēdecim milia peditum, equitēs mille octingentī, nāvēs longae centum sexāgintā. Cum his terrestribus maritimisque cōpiīs Tiberius Semprōnius in Siciliam missus est. Cornēliō minus cōpiārum datum est, quia Lūcius Manlius praetor⁹ et ipse cum haud invalidō¹⁰ praesidiō in Galliam mittēbātur. Nāvium maximē Cornēliō numerus dēminūtus est. Neque enim marī ventūrum aut eā parte bellī dīmicitūrum hostem crēdēbant. Datae sunt duae legiōnēs Rōmānae cum suō iūstō equitātū et quattuordecim milibus sociōrum peditum, equitibus mille sescentis. His ita comparātis, ut omnia iūsta ante bellum fierent, lēgātōs in Āfricam mīsērunt ut cognōscerent pūblicōne¹¹ cōnsiliō Hannibal Saguntum oppugnāvisset, et, si id fatērentur ac dēfenderent, ut indicerent populō Carthāginiēnsī bellum. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*
quassō, 1, *shake*
pūberēs, um, m., *adults*
īngēns, īngentis, *enormous*
excidium, exci'dī, n., *downfall*
īra, ae, f., *wrath (ire)*
turbō, 1, *disturb (turbulent)*

terrestris, e, *of the land*
haud, *not, by no means*
dēminuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *diminish*
crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe*
iūstus, a, um, *appropriate*
fateor, 2, fassus, *acknowledge*
indicō, 3, dixī, dictus, *declare*

NOTES

¹ *respōnsum*: a noun. ² *prōciderat*: *prō* + *cadō*. ³ *mōmentō*: English derivative? ⁴ *capit*: historical present. ⁵ *hostilia*: *hostis* + *ilis*, *belonging to*. ⁶ *metus*: synonym of *timor*. ⁷ *erant*: with *nōminātae*.
⁸ *Cornēliō*: Scipio. ⁹ *praetor*: one of the chief magistrates of Rome.
¹⁰ *invalidō*: *in* + *validus* from *valeō*. ¹¹ *pūblicōne*: note the particle.

This passage contains clauses of purpose and of result. Do they follow or precede the verbs on which they depend? Which is an exception? Account for its position.

EXERCISE XXV

Grammar: A. 346, *c*; 419, *a*; 546; 573; 574. B. 201, 1, *a*; 227, 1; 288, 1, B; 300, 1. G. 372, R. 2; 409; 585; 452, 2; 467. H. 444; 489; 600, II, 1; 649, II.

Inflection: *volō*; *pater*; *pūblicus*; *tū*.

Order of words: indirect questions commonly follow the clause on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

<i>postquam</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>auctōritāte</i>	<i>sūmite</i>
<i>mandātum erat</i>	<i>iūre</i>	<i>portāmus</i>	<i>iterum</i>
<i>quaesivisset</i>	<i>licuerit</i>		

THE EMBASSY TO CARTHAGE DOES NOT AVERT
THE WAR

Rōmānī postquam Carthāginem vērunt, cum senātus datus esset et Quīntus Fabius lēgātus nihil quam ūnum quod mandātum erat quaesivisset, tum ex Carthāginiēnsibus ūnus: "Ego nōn pīvātō pūblicōne cōnsiliō Saguntum oppugnātum sit quaerendum¹ cēseō, sed utrum iūre an iniūriā. Nostra enim haec quaestio est, quid imperātor nostrō aut suō fēcerit arbitriō. Vōbiscum ūna disceptatio est, licueritne per foedus fieri. Vōs quod Gāius Lutātius cōsul primō nōbiscum foedus² icit, quia neque ex auctōritāte patrum nec populī iussū ictum erat, negāvistis vōs eō tenēri; itaque aliud dē integrō³ foedus pūblicō cōnsiliō ictum est. Sī vōs nōn

tenent foedera vestra nisi ex auctōritāte aut iussū vestrō icta, nē nōs quidem⁴ Hasdrubalis foedus, quod nōbīs īnsciis⁵ īcit,⁶ obligāre⁷ potuit. Omittite⁸ Saguntī atque Hibērī mentiōnem facere, et quod diū parturit animus vester aliquandō pariat."⁹ Tum Rōmānus, sinū ex togā factō, "Hic," inquit, "vōbīs bellum et pācem portāmus; utrum placet, sūmite." Tum succlāmātum¹⁰ est, daret¹¹ utrum vellet. Et cum is, iterum sinū effūsō, bellum dare dixisset, accipere sē omnēs respondērunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

cēnsēō, 2, uī, us, *be of opinion*
 quaestio, ōnis, f., *inquiry* (question)
 arbitrium, arbi'trī, n., *decision*
 disceptātiō, ōnis, f., *discussion*
 foedus, eris, n., *treaty*
 icō, 3, icī, ictus, *strike*, (with foedus)
 make
 quia, *because*
 negō, 1, say "no," *deny* (negative)

integer, gra, grum, *fresh*
 parturiō, 4, īvī, —, *desire to*
 bring forth, meditate
 aliquandō, *at length*
 sinus, ūs, m., *fold* (sinuous)
 inquam (defective verb), *say*
 placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*
 effundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, *empty*

NOTES

¹ *quaerendum*: indirect discourse after cēnsēō; the subject is the preceding clause. ² *foedus*: placed in the relative clause for emphasis. Translate with eō. ³ *dē integrō*: *afresh*. Compare *dē imprōvīsō*. ⁴ *nē... quidem*: the emphatic word stands between. ⁵ *īnsciis*: in + sciō. ⁶ *īcit*: subject refers to *Hasdrubalis*. ⁷ *obligāre*: *bind*. ⁸ *omittite*: English derivative? ⁹ *pariat*: *let it bring forth*, a subjunctive of exhortation. ¹⁰ *succlāmātum*: synonym of *exclāmō*. ¹¹ *daret*: this was an imperative in the words of the Carthaginians.

Explain the derivation of *quaestio*, *imperātor*, *auctōritāte*.



A ROMAN COIN

EXERCISE XXVI

Grammar: A. 370: 413: 580: 584. B. 187, III; 222; 314, I; 270, I, a, b, c; 317. G. 347; 392; 650; 653; 531. H. 429; 473, I; 642; 643; 617.

Inflection: proficīscor; gladius; omnis; quī.

Order of words: a relative pronoun often stands first in a sentence because its antecedent is in the preceding sentence.

Prescribed list:

servitūtis	praeter	vigiliā	rīpā
moram	vixdum	tergō	dextrīs
loquī	occurreret	adoriātur	anceps
hospitem	āverteret	ēditō	vīcōs
enim			

HANNIBAL ON HIS MARCH TRIES TO CONCILIATE THE
GAULS, BUT IS OPPOSED BY A POWERFUL TRIBE

Hannibal cum magnis cōpiis Pŷrēnaeum¹ trānsgrēditur et castra pōnit. Galli, quamquam Ītalīae² bellum ĩnferri audiēbant, tamen quia fāma³ erat Hispānōs trāns Pŷrēnaeum vī subāctōs esse, metū⁴ servitūtis ad arma cōsternātī⁵ conveniunt. Quod ubi Hannibali nūntiātum est, moram magis quam bellum metuēns⁶ ōrātōrēs⁷ ad eōs mīsit, loquī sē cum iis velle, et acceptūrum eōs in castra sua; hospitem⁸ enim sē Gallīae, nōn hostem vēnisse, nec strictūrum esse gladium, sī per Gallōs liceret, antequam⁹ in Ītaliā vēnisset. Interim Pūblius Cornēlius, dux Rōmānus, profectus ab urbe sexāgintā longīs nāvibus praeter ōram Etrūriāe¹⁰ pervenit Massiliā¹¹ et castra pōnit, vixdum satis crēdēns Hannibalem superāvisse Pŷrēnaeōs montis. Quem ut dē Rhodanī quoque trānsitū¹² agitāre cognōvit, incertus in quō locō eī occurreret, trecentōs equitēs ad explōranda omnia praemittit. Hannibal iam in Volcārum pervēnerat agrum, gentis validae.¹³ Ingēns vis nāvium coācta est. Omnibus rēbus satis comparātis ad trāciendum¹⁴ terrēbant ex adversō hostēs. Quōs ut āverteret Hannibal Hannōnem vigiliā primā noctis cum

parte cōpiārum adversō flūmine ire iter ūnius diēi iubet et trā-
iectō flūmine circumducere agmen ut hostis ā tergō adoriātur.
Posterō diē profecti ex locō ēditō fūmō significant trānsisse et
haud procul¹⁵ abesse. Quod ubi accēpit, Hannibal nāvibus lintri-
busque cōpiās flūmen trādūcit. Gallī occursant in rīpā, quatientēs
scūta super capita, vibrantēs dextrīs tēla. Mox et¹⁶ ipse Hannō
aderat, anceps terror circumstābat. Gallī perrumpunt et in vicōs
suōs diffugiunt.¹⁷ — LIVY

VOCABULARY

trānsgridior, 3, gressus, *cross*

quamquam, *although*

quia, *because*

subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *compel*

stringō, 3, strīnxī, strictus, *draw*

ōra, ae, f., *coast*

crēdō, 3, didī, dītus, *believe* (credible)

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*

ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

terreō, 2, uī, itus, *alarm*

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke* (fume)

linter, tris, f., *skiff*

occursō, 1, *oppose*

quatiō, 3, —, quassus, *shake*

super, *above*

vibrō, 1, *brandish* (vibrate)

mox, *presently*

circumstō, 1, stetī, —, *stand*
around

perrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break*
through

NOTES

¹ Fyreneaeum: the Pyrenees mountains. ² Italiae: for the case, consider inferri. ³ fama: synonym of rumor. English derivative? ⁴ metu: synonym of timor. ⁵ consternati: synonym of commoveo. ⁶ metuens: compare metu above. ⁷ oratores: oro + tor, *intercessors*. The following indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying implied in this word. ⁸ hospitem: contrasted with hostem. Notice the emphasis. ⁹ antequam: synonym of priusquam. ¹⁰ Etruriae: northwest of Rome. ¹¹ Massiliam: Marseilles. ¹² transitu: trans + eo + tus, *act of*. ¹³ validae: derived from the verb valeo. ¹⁴ traiciendum: trans + iacio. ¹⁵ haud procul: *by no means far*. ¹⁶ et: *also*. ¹⁷ diffugiunt: dis + fugio.

EXERCISE XXVII

Grammar: A. 208, *d*: 418: 452, 1: 531, 2. B. 256, 3: 226: 329: 330: 282, 2. G. 208, 2: 397: 422: 630. H. 302, 6: 480: 615, 1: 590.

Inflection: pōnō; animal; inferior; quis.

Order of words: clauses of purpose and result commonly follow the clause on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

quīngentōs	via	prope	regiōne
trecentī	quārtīs	inde	propinquō
occurrunt	incolunt	īnferior	renovāvērunt

HANNIBAL ADVANCES TOWARD THE PASSAGE OF
THE ALPS

Hannibal Numidās equitēs quīngentōs ad castra Rōmāna mīserat, quī cognōscerent ubi et quantae cōpiae essent et quid parārent. Huic ālae equitum trecentī Rōmānōrum equitēs occurrunt. Āriter pugnātum est. Fuga Numidārum Rōmānīs victōriam dedit. Rē ita gestā, Hannibal Ītaliā petere cōstituit. Profectus adversā ripā Rhodanī mediterrānea Galliae petit, nōn quia rēctor ad Alpīs via esset, sed quia cum Rōmānīs, priusquam in Ītaliā vēnisset, nōn erat in animō proelium committere. Quārtīs castrīs ad insulam pervēnit. Incolunt prope Allobrogēs, gēns iam inde nullā Gallicā gente¹ opibus aut fāmā² inferior. Cum iam Alpīs Hannibal peteret, nōn rēctā regiōne³ iter instituit, sed ad laevam⁴ in Tricastinōs flexit. Inde Alpīs pervēnit. Tum ex propinquō vīsa montium altitūdō nivēsque caelō prope immixtae, hominēs intōnsī et incultī, animālia inanimaque omnia rīgentia gelū, terrōrem renovāvērunt. Hannibal cōsistere signa iussit. Gallis ad visenda loca praemissis, castra pōnit. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

āla, ae, f., *squadron*
mediterrānea, ōrum, n., *interior*
quia, *because*

rēctus, a, um, *straight* (rēctify)
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*
(ops), opis, f., *resources*

flexō, 3, flexī, flexus, <i>turn</i>	inanimus, a, um, <i>lifeless</i> (inanimate)
nix, nivis, f., <i>snow</i>	rigēō, 2, uī, —, <i>be stiff</i> (rigid)
caelum, ī, n., <i>sky</i>	gelū, ūs, n., <i>cold</i> (congeal)
intōnsus, a, um, <i>rude</i>	vīsō, 3, vīsī, vīsus, <i>look at</i>
incultus, a, um, <i>wild</i>	

NOTES

- ¹ *gente*: for the case, consider *inferior*. ² *fāmā*: English derivative?
³ *regiōne*: *direction*. ⁴ *laevam*: synonym of *sinister*.
 Explain the derivation of *pervēnit*, *altitudō*, *inanima*, *praemissis*.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 405, N. 3; 424, a; 537, N. 2. B. 201, 2; 216, 1; 181, 2; 284, 1. G. 372; 401, R. 2; 336; 552, end. H. 442; 468, 1; 417, 1; 570.

Inflection: *mālō*; *saxum*; *alius*; *ipse*.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

lūce	inde	īnsidiīs	undique
castellīs	cibō	experīrī	fronte
simul	pecoribus	temerē	tergō
vulnerātī	apertō	rōbore	coortī

HANNIBAL ATTEMPTS THE CROSSING OF THE ALPS, BUT IS ATTACKED BY THE MOUNTAINEERS

Primā deinde lūce castra mōvit. Montānī signō datō ex castellis conveniēbant. Tum vērō simul ab hostibus, simul ab inīquitāte¹ locōrum Poenī oppugnābantur. Equī maximē infēstum agmen faciēbant, quī territī trepidābant et ictī forte aut vulnerātī adeō cōsternābantur ut strāgem ingentem simul hominum ac sarcinārum omnis generis² facerent. Stetit parumper Hannibal ac suōs continuit, nē tumultum ac trepidatiōnem³ augeret. Castellum inde, quod caput eius regiōnis erat, viculōsque circumiectōs cēpit, et captivō⁴ cibō ac pecoribus per trīduum exercitum aluit. Perventum

inde est ad alium populum. Ibi nōn bellō apertō, sed fraude⁵ et insidiis est prope circumventus. Prīncipēs castellōrum ōrātōrēs⁶ ad Poenum veniunt memorantēs⁷ amicitiam malle quam vim experiri Poenōrum; itaque imperāta factūrōs esse. Hannibal nec temerē crēdendum⁸ ratus,⁹ benignē cum respondisset, obsidibus quōs dabant acceptis et commeātū quem in viam ipsi dētulerant ūsus, nēquāquam ut inter pācātōs, compositō¹⁰ agmine, ducēs eōrum sequitur. Primum agmen elephantī et equitēs erant; ipse post cum rōbore peditum incēdēbat.¹¹ Ubi in angustiorē viam vērērunt, undique ex insidiis barbari ā fronte, ab tergō coortī comminus ēminus petunt,¹² saxa ingentia in agmen dēvolvunt. Tunc quoque ad extrēmum periculi ac prope perniciem vērērunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

montānus, ī, m., *mountaineer*

īnfēstus, a, um, *unsafe*

terreō, 2, uī, itus, *frighten*

trepidō, 1, *be in alarm*

īcō, 3, īcī, ictus, *strike*

forte, *by chance*

adeō, *to such a degree*

cōnsternō, 1, *terrify*

strāgēs, is, f., *destruction*

ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

sarcinae, ārum, f., *packs*

stō, 1, stetī, statum, *stand*

parumper, *for a little while*

tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising*

vīculus, ī, m., *hamlet*

alō, 3, uī, tus or itus, *feed*

mālō, malle, māluī, —, *prefer*

crēdō, 3, didī, dītus, *believe (creed)*

benignē, *in a kindly way*

nēquāquam, *by no means*

comminus, *hand to hand*

ēminus, *from a distance*

dēvolvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, *roll down*

perniciēs, ēī, f., *ruin (pernicious)*

NOTES

¹ iniquitāte: in + aequus + tās. ² generis: shows quality. ³ trepidatiōnem: trepidō + tiō. ⁴ captivō: *captured*. ⁵ fraude: English derivative? ⁶ ōrātōrēs: ōrō + tor. ⁷ memorantēs: = dicentēs. ⁸ crēdendum: understand esse. The subject refers to the preceding statement. ⁹ ratus: participle of reor, a synonym of putō. ¹⁰ compositō: con + pōnō. ¹¹ incēdēbat: = prōcēdēbat. ¹² petunt: *attack*.

Select phrases from the passage and note the emphasis expressed by the arrangement of the words in each phrase.

EXERCISE XXIX

Grammar: A. 293; 423, 2; 579; 580; 584. B. 241, 1; 181, 1; 313; 314, 1; 317. G. 291, R. 2; 336; 648; 650; 653. H. 497, 4; 417; 641; 642; 643; 644.

Inflection: iubeō; pedes; lātē (compare); quisquam.

Order of words: words are arranged in clauses or sentences in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list:

cunctātur	nōnō	unde	praeceps
angustiās	iugum	cōsistere	mēse
praesidiō	bīduum	modo	cōstat
peditibus	quōdam	prōcēdere	

HANNIBAL REACHES THE SUMMIT OF THE ALPS AND
DESCENDS INTO ITALY

Dum cunctātur¹ Hannibal dēmittere² agmen in angustiās, quia³ nōn, ut ipse equitibus praesidiō erat, ita peditibus quicquam ab tergō auxiliī reliquī erat, montānī⁴ per obliqua⁵ occursantēs, interruptō mediō agmine, viam insēdere, noxque ūna Hannibalī sine equitibus atque impedimentis ācta est. Nōnō diē in iugum Alpium pervēnerunt. Bīduum in iugō stativa habita,⁶ fessisque⁷ labōre ac pugnandō quiēs data est militibus. Hannibal praegressus signa in prōmunturiō quōdam, unde longē ac lātē prōspectus erat, cōsistere iussis militibus Ītaliā ostentat et dicit eōs moenia⁸ tum trānscedere nōn Ītaliae modo sed etiam urbis Rōmānae; ūnō proeliō arcem et caput Ītaliae in manū ac potestāte cōs habitūrōs esse. Prōcēdere inde agmen coepit. Omnis ferē via praeceps, angusta erat, ut sustinēre sē ā lāpsū nōn possent. Hōc modō in Ītaliā perventum est, quīntō mēse ā Carthāgine Novā,⁹ ut quīdam auctōrēs sunt, quīntō decimō diē Alpibus superātis. Quantae cōpiae Hannibalī¹⁰ fuerint, nēquāquam inter auctōrēs cōstat. Quī plūrimum, centum milia peditum, vīginti equitum fuisse scribunt; qui¹¹ minimum, vīginti milia peditum, sex equitum. — Livy

VOCABULARY

occursō, 1, <i>rush against</i>	arx, arcis, f., <i>citadel</i>
insideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, <i>occupy</i>	lāpsus, ūs, m., <i>slipping (relapse)</i>
stativa, ōrum, n., <i>stationary camp</i>	auctor, ōris, m., <i>author, writer</i>
praegredior, 3, gressus, <i>advance</i>	nēquāquam, <i>by no means</i>
trāscendō, 3, scendī, scēnsus, <i>climb over</i>	scribō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, <i>write</i>

NOTES

¹ *cunctātur dum*, *while*, is regularly followed by the present indicative. What tense is required in the translation? ² *dēmittere*: for the meaning, observe the composition. ³ *quia*: = *quod*. ⁴ *montāni*: *mōns + ānus*, *pertaining to*. ⁵ *per obliqua*: used adverbially. Compare *dē imprōvisō*. ⁶ *habita*: supply *sunt*. ⁷ *fessīs*: = *dēfessīs*. ⁸ *moenia*: referring to the Alps. ⁹ *Carthāgine Novā*: a city in Spain. ¹⁰ *Hannibali*: dative of the possessor. Translate it as the subject of the appropriate form of the verb *have*. ¹¹ *quī*: understand *scribunt*.

Explain the derivation of *potestāte*, *sustinēre*, *auctōrēs*.

EXERCISE XXX

Grammar: A. 374, *a*; 375; 406; 412; 504. B. 189, 1, 2; 217, 1; 220, 1; 338, 1, *a*. G. 354; 355; 398; 399; 428. H. 431, 2; 471; 473, 3; 626.

Inflection: *ferō*; *nāvis*; *habēns*; *ego*.

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is usually the place of emphasis.

Prescribed list:

locūtus esse	occurrīstis	quōcumque	statuit
dextrā	imposuit	rōboris	potius
maria	praemia	praetereā	iterum
urgent	aestāte	superbissima	

AFTER DESCENDING THE ALPS INTO ITALY HANNIBAL
ADDRESSES HIS SOLDIERS

Cōntiōne inde advocātā¹ ita apud militēs Hannibal locūtus esse fertur²: "Dextrā laevāque³ duo maria claudunt nūllam nē ad effugium⁴ quidem nāvem nōs habentīs; circā⁵ Padus flūmen, Padus

maior ac violentior⁶ Rhodanō, ab tergō Alpēs urgent, vix integrīs vōbīs trānsitae. Hic⁷ vincendum⁸ aut moriendum, milītēs, est, ubi primum hostī occurrīstis. Et eadem fortūna quae necessitatem pugnandī imposuit, ea⁹ praemia vōbīs victōribus prōpōnit quibus¹⁰ ampliōra hominēs nē ab deīs quidem immortalibus optāre¹¹ solent. Hic vōbīs terminum labōrum fortūna dedit. Pugnābitis cum exercitū tīrōne, hāc ipsā aestāte victō ā Gallīs. Quōcumque circumtulī oculōs,¹² plēna omnia videō animōrum ac rōboris, veterānum peditem, generōsissimārum gentium equitēs, vōs sociōs fidēlissimōs¹³ fortissimōsque, vōs, Carthāginiēnsēs, cum prō patriā tum ob iram iūstissimam pugnātūrōs. Inferimus bellum infēstisque signīs descendimus in Ītaliā. Accendit¹⁴ praetereā et stimulat animōs dolor,¹⁵ iniūria, indignitās. Crūdēlissima ac superbissima gēns sua¹⁶ omnia facit. Circumscribit inclūditque¹⁷ nōs terminīs montium flūminumque quōs nōn excēdāmus, neque eōs quōs statuit terminōs observat. Duōs cōsulēs huius annī, ūnum in Āfricā, alterum in Hispāniā mīsērunt. Nihil ūsquam nōbīs relictum est nisi quod armīs vindicāverimus. Vōbīs necesse est fortibus virīs esse et aut vincere, aut, sī fortūna dubitābit, in proeliō potius quam in fugā mortem oppetere.¹⁸ Si hoc bene fixum omnibus est, iterum dīcam, vicistis. Nūllum ācrius contemptū¹⁹ mortis tēlum ad vincendum hominī ab deīs immortalibus datum est.” — LIVY

VOCABULARY

cōntiō, ōnis, m., *assembly*
 claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, *shut in*
 integer, gra, grum, *fresh*
 morior, morī, mortuus, *die*
 deus, ī, m., *god*
 soleō, 2, solitus, *be accustomed*
 tīrō, ōnis, m., *recruit*: as adj.,
newly levied
 plēnus, a, um, *full (plenty)*
 generōsus, a, um, *excellent*
 gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*

īra, ae, f., *wrath (irate)*
 infēstus, a, um, *hostile*
 accendō, 3, dī, accēnsus, *kindle*
 crūdēlis, e, *cruel*
 circumscribō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus,
confine
 ūsquam, *anywhere*
 vindicō, 1, *defend*
 necesse (indeclinable), *necessary*
 figō, 3, fixī, fixus, *establish*

NOTES

¹ *advocatā*: notice the composition. ² *fertur*: *is said*. ³ *laevā*: synonym of *sinister*. ⁴ *effugium*: *ex + fugiō + ium, act of*. ⁵ *circā*: adverb, synonymous with *circum*. ⁶ *violentior*: *vīs + lentus, full of*. ⁷ *hic*: adverb. ⁸ *vincendum*: understand *vōbis*. ⁹ *ea*: subject of *prōpōnit*. ¹⁰ *quibus*: depends on *ampliōra*. ¹¹ *optāre*: synonym of *volō*. ¹² *oculōs*: English derivative "oculist." ¹³ *fidēlissimōs*: *fidēs + lis, pertaining to*. Compare "fidelity." ¹⁴ *accendit*: notice the order of the words in the sentence. ¹⁵ *dolor*: *doleō + or, act of*. ¹⁶ *sua*: predicate adjective, *its own*. ¹⁷ *inclūdit*: *in + claudō*. ¹⁸ *oppetere*: *meet*. ¹⁹ *contemptū*: depends on *ācrius*.

Think of English words from *maria, nāvem, urgent, occurristis, patria, circumscribit, vincere*.

EXERCISE XXXI

Grammar: A. 414; 418; 504; 537. N. 2. B. 223; 226; 338. 1, a; 284. 1. G. 403; 397; 428; 552, end. H. 479. 1; 480; 626; 570.

Inflection: *pellō*; *virtūs*: *superus* (compare); *quī*.

Order of words: demonstrative pronouns and adjectives of quantity tend to precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

<i>nēmō</i>	<i>nisi</i>	<i>prius</i>	<i>reddidit</i>
<i>praestitisse</i>	<i>velut</i>	<i>aliēnārum</i>	<i>potentissimus</i>
<i>congressus est</i>	<i>sic</i>	<i>dēstitit</i>	<i>incendit</i>

THE CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL AND HIS HATRED OF ROME

Hannibal,¹ Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērūm est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnīs gentīs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō² praestitisse cēterōs³ imperātōrēs prūdentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat⁴ fortitudinē⁵ cūctās⁶ nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque cum eō⁷ congressus est in Itāliā, semper discessit superior. Quod⁸ nisi domī civiūm⁹ suōrum invidiā debilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Hic autem velut hērēditate relictum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit ut prius¹⁰ animam quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem,

cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum¹¹ indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns¹² hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte¹³ incendit bellandī ut ūsque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit inferre Ītaliae.

NEPOS

VOCABULARY

gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>	ergā, <i>towards</i>
īnfītor, 1, <i>deny</i>	cōservō, 1, <i>keep</i> (conservation)
quotiēnscumque, <i>as often as</i>	anima, ae, f., <i>life</i>
semper, <i>always</i>	(ops), opis, f., <i>aid</i>
invidia, ae, f., <i>jealousy</i>	indigēō, 2, uī, —, <i>need</i> (indigent)
dēbilitō, 1, <i>weaken</i> (debility)	numquam, <i>never</i>
hērēditās, ātis, f., <i>inheritance</i>	ūsque, <i>all the way</i>
odium, odī, n., <i>hatred</i> (odious)	ruber, bra, brum, <i>red</i>

NOTES

¹ Hannibal: the verb is understood. ² tantō: degree of difference. ³ cēterōs: synonym of reliquī. ⁴ antecēdat: ante + cēdō. ⁵ fortitūdine: fortis + tūdō. ⁶ cūctās: synonym of omnis. ⁷ eō: i.e. populō Rōmānō. ⁸ quod: *therefore*. ⁹ civium: civitās is formed from the stem. ¹⁰ prius: *sooner*. ¹¹ opum: depends on indigēret. ¹² absēns: he was in Italy at the time. ¹³ cupiditāte: cupidus + tās.

Observe the words in this passage nearly identical with English words: prūdentīā, fortitūdine, nātiōnēs, superior, odium, paternum, omittam, absēns, and others.

EXERCISE XXXII

Grammar: A. 415; 419, a; 573; 580, c. B. 224; 227, 1; 300, 1. G. 400; 409; 452, 2; 423, N. 5. H. 473, 2; 489; 649, II.

Inflection: quaerō; annus; tenēns: hīc.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

nātō	fidem	īnstituerat	dēbeat
quaesīvit	postulō	iūrāre	quīn
libenter	simul	iūsiūrandum	cēlāris

HANNIBAL'S SPEECH TO ANTIOCHUS ABOUT HIS OATH
OF HATRED TO THE ROMANS

Pater meus Hamilcar, puerulō¹ mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs² nātō, in Hispāniam³ imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgine, Iovī optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs⁴ dum cōficiēbātur, quaesivit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. Id cum libenter accēpissēm atque ab eō petere coepissēm nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, "Faciam," inquit,⁵ "sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis." Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque cēteris⁶ remōtis tenentem⁷ iūrāre iussit numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānis fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī ut nēmīni dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus.⁸ Quārē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānis cōgitābis, nōn imprūdentē fēceris sī mē cēlāris⁹; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in eō princīpem posueris. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

utpote, *as, inasmuch as*
 hostia, *ae, f., victim*
 immolō, *1, sacrifice*
 inquam (defective verb), *say*
 āra, *ae, f., altar*
 numquam, *never*
 ūsque, *all the time*

aetās, ātis, *f., time of life*
 cōservō, *1, keep*
 dubius, *a, um, doubtful*
 mēns, *mentis, f., mind (mental)*
 cōgitō, *1, plan*
 frūstror, *1, disappoint*

NOTES

¹ puerulō: puer + ulus, *little*. ² annōs: regularly after *amplius*, though the ablative is the rule after a comparative. ³ Hispāniam: Spain, where the Second Punic War started. ⁴ rēs: refers to *hostiās immolāvit*.
⁵ inquit: regularly inserted after one or more words of a direct quotation.
⁶ cēteris: synonym of *reliquī*. ⁷ tenentem: understand *mē*. ⁸ sim futūrus: this form expresses future time in the subjunctive mood. The subjunctive is used after *quīn*. ⁹ cēlāris: what letters are omitted?

Explain the derivation of *imperātor*, *amicitīā*.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Grammar: A. 370; 400; 423, 1; 568. B. 187, III; 214, 2; 231; 297, 1. G. 347; 390, 2; 393; 553, 1. H. 429; 464; 486; 566.

Inflection: eō; equitātus; factus; is.

Order of words: prepositional phrases usually precede the word which they limit, and are arranged according to the emphasis put on them.

Prescribed list:

praefuit	sīc	nēmō	effēcit
summam	comparāvit	nisi	inermis
dētulit	frātre	praeter	vix
pūblicē	quācumque	concidit	saucium

HANNIBAL'S SUCCESS WITH HOSTILE TRIBES BEFORE
HE REACHES ITALY

Hāc igitur¹ aetate² cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est³; cuius post obitum,⁴ Hasdrubale imperātore suffectō, equitātui omnī prae-fuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem delātum pūblicē⁵ comprobātum est.⁶ Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vīginti annīs⁷ nātus imperātor⁸ factus, proximō trienniō⁹ omnīs gentis Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam¹⁰ civitātem, vī expugnāvit, trīs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex his ūnum in Āfricam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Ītaliā sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs¹¹ cōnflīxit¹²; nēminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpīs postquam vēnit, quae Ītaliā ab Galliā sēiungunt,¹³ quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat, Alpicōs¹⁴ cōnantis prohibēre trānsitū¹⁵ concidit, loca patefēcit,¹⁶ itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā¹⁷ elephantus ōrnātus¹⁸ ire posset quā antea¹⁹ ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliāque pervēnit. Pugnāverat apud Rhodanum cum Pūbliō Cornēliō Scipiōne cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem apud Padum²⁰ dimicat sauciumque inde ac fugātum²¹ dimittit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

aetās, ātis, f., <i>time of life</i>	saltus, ūs, m., <i>mountain pass</i>
sufficiō, 3, fēcī, fectus, <i>put in place of</i>	umquam, <i>ever</i>
gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe (gentile)</i>	ōrnō, 1, <i>equip</i>
subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, <i>subdue</i>	rēpō, 3, rēpsī, —, <i>creep</i>

NOTES

¹ igitur: = itaque. ² aetāte: i. e. novem annōs nātus. ³ profectus est: subject refers to Hannibal. ⁴ obitum: synonym of mors. ⁵ pūblicē: i. e. by the government, in spite of his youth. ⁶ comprobātum est: con + probō. ⁷ annīs: for the case, consider minor. ⁸ imperātor: in the predicate with factus. ⁹ trienniō: trēs + annus. ¹⁰ foederātam: *allied*.
¹¹ incolīs: noun from the verb incolō. ¹² cōnflīxit: synonym of pugnō.
¹³ sēiungunt: sē, dis-, + iungō. ¹⁴ Alpicōs: *dwellers in the Alps*. ¹⁵ trāns-
itū: trāns + eō + tus. ¹⁶ patefēcit: pateō + faciō. ¹⁷ eā: understand
viā. ¹⁸ ōrnātus: contrasted with inermis below. ¹⁹ anteā: opposite
of postea. ²⁰ Padum: the Po river. ²¹ fugātum: *routed*.

EXERCISE XXXIV

Grammar: A. 452, 1; 509; 510; 531, a. B. 329; 330; 340, 1, 2; 282, 1, a. G. 422; 435; 436; 545, 2. H. 609, 1; 633; 635; 568, 7.

Inflection: possum; aciēs; uterque; quī.

Order of words: an appositive regularly follows the noun which it limits.

Prescribed list:

dextrō	aliquot	cupīvit	simul
aequē	praetereā	valentior	excesserant
premerētur	restitit	congrederētur	contrāxit
hinc	iterum	bīduō	

HANNIBAL DEFEATS THE ROMANS BOTH IN ITALY AND IN AFRICA

Per Ligurēs¹ Appenninum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere adeō gravī morbō afficitur² oculōrum ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine³ cum etiamtum

premerētur lectīcāque ferrētur, Gāium Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumēnum⁴ cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occidit,⁵ neque multō post⁶ Gāium Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlectā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam⁷ pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vērunt⁸ duo cōsulēs, Gāius Terentius et Lūcius Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōsulārīs, in iis Gnaeum Servilium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōsul. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre⁹ proelia. Quamdiū in Ītaliā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēsem¹⁰ pugnam in campō castra posuit. Hinc invictus¹¹ patriam dēfēnsū¹² revocātus bellum gessit adversus Pūblium Scipiōnem, filium eius Scipiōnis quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum,¹³ tertiō apud Trebiam¹⁴ fugārat. Cum hōc, exhaustis iam patriae facultātibus, cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congrederētur. In colloquium convēnit¹⁵; condiōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam¹⁶ cum eōdem cōflīxit¹⁷; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) biduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiātī sunt¹⁸ eī; quōs nōn solum effūgit¹⁹ sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit; novīs dilēctibus paucis diēbus multōs contrāxit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

adeō, <i>so</i>	campus, ī, m., <i>field</i>
morbus, ī, m., <i>disease (morbid)</i>	revocō, 1, <i>recall</i>
oculus, ī, m., <i>eye (ocular)</i>	exhauriō, 4. hausī, haustus, <i>use up</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	patria, ae, f., <i>native land</i>
lectīca, ae, f., <i>litter</i>	impraesentiārum, <i>for the present</i>
saltus, ūs, m., <i>mountain pass</i>	compōnō, 3. posuī, positus, <i>settle</i> (compose)
fugō, 1, <i>put to flight</i>	colligō, 3. lēgī, lēctus, <i>collect</i>
cōsulārīs, is, m., <i>ex-consul</i>	dilēctus, ūs, m., <i>levy</i>
ēnumerō, 1, <i>relate</i>	
quamdiū, <i>as long as</i>	

NOTES

¹ **Ligurēs**: a tribe in the northwestern part of Italy. ² **afficitur**: English derivative? ³ **valētūdine**: **valeō** + **tūdō**. It means *a state of health*, either good or bad, according to the context. ⁴ **Trasumēnum**: a lake in Etruria. ⁵ **occidit**: did he do this *in spite of* **premerētur** and **ferrētur**, or *because of* those acts? ⁶ **post**: adverb. ⁷ **Āpūliam**: in southern Italy. ⁸ **obviam vēnērunt**: *met.* ⁹ **ēnumerāre**: English derivative? ¹⁰ **Cannēsem**: *of Cannæ*. Here the Romans met their worst defeat at the hands of Hannibal, in 216 B.C. ¹¹ **invictus**: compare English "inconvenient." ¹² **dēfēsum**: supine with **revocātus**. ¹³ **Padum**: the Po. ¹⁴ **Trebiā**: a river of northern Italy. Here Hannibal defeated the Romans in 218 B.C. ¹⁵ **convēnit**: *an agreement was made.* ¹⁶ **Zamam**: a town in northern Africa, near which Scipio finally defeated Hannibal in 202 B.C. ¹⁷ **cōnflīxit**: synonym of **pugnō**. ¹⁸ **insidiātī sunt**: deponent formed from the stem of **insidiae**. ¹⁹ **effūgit**: **ex** + **fugiō**.

EXERCISE XXXV

Grammar: A. 427, 1, 2, 3; 540, 2; 563. B. 229, 1; 182, 1; 228, 1, a; 232, 1; 286, 1; 295, 1. G. 391; 337; 411; 386; 541; 546. H. 491, II, 1, 2, 3; 588, II; 565.

Inflection: **fīō**; **mūnus**; **ācriter**: **ille**.

Order of words: the dependent clauses are arranged in the sentence in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list:

item	simul	susceptum	creābantur
frāter	cōsultō	hūc	parī
grātiās	rogārent	rediit	praebuit
pācem	operā	bīnī	penderētur
corōnā			

THE CARTHAGINIANS MAKE PEACE WITH THE ROMANS,
BUT HANNIBAL FIGHTS ON UNTIL RECALLED

Cum in apparandō¹ ācerimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō² sētius exercitū posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gēssit itemque Māgō frāter eius ūsque ad Pūblium Sulpiciū Gāium Aurēlium³ cōsulēs. His enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī senātū

populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent⁴ quod cum iis pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent, simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis⁵ essent captivīque redderentur. His ex senātūs cōsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captivōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum⁶ nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent⁷ itemque frātre[m] eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō cognitō Carthāginiēnsēs Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocā-runt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat annō secundō et vicēsimo; ut⁸ enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic⁸ Carthāgine quotannis annuī⁹ binī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī diligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac¹⁰ fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānis ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam supereset quae in aerāriō repō-nerētur.¹¹ — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

compōnō, 3. posuī, positus, <i>settle</i>	revocō, 1, <i>recall</i>
sētius, <i>the less</i>	vicēsimus, a, um, <i>twentieth</i>
ūsque, <i>all the time</i>	quotannis, <i>yearly</i>
aureus, a, um, <i>golden</i>	vectīgālis, is, n., <i>revenue</i>
dōnō, 1, <i>present</i> (donor)	pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money</i> (pecuniary)
grātus, a, um, <i>pleasing</i>	foedus, eris, n., <i>treaty</i>
nunc, <i>now</i>	aerārium, aerārī, n., <i>treasury</i>

NOTES

- ¹ apparandō: ad + parō. ² nihilō: = nihil. For the case, consider sētius.
³ Sulpicium, Aurēlium: the Romans designated a year by the names of the consuls. ⁴ agerent: states the purpose of vēnērunt. ⁵ Fregellis: *Fregellae*, a city not far from Rome. ⁶ inimicissimum: in + amicus.
⁷ habērent: the subject refers to the Carthaginians. ⁸ ut, sic: introducing ideas which are compared. ⁹ annuī: adjective from annus. Compare the English "annual." ¹⁰ ac: *as*. ¹¹ repōnerētur: re + pōnō.

What is the force of the prefix in *apparandō*, *praefuit*, *redderentur*, *remissūrōs*, *susceptum*, *revocārent*?

EXERCISE XXXVI

Grammar: A. 426, 1, 2, 3; 427, 1, 2, 3; 530; 531, 2. B. 229, 1; 182, 1, 2; 228, 1, *a*; 232, 1; 282, 1, *a*. G. 390, 1; 337, 1; 385; 386; 411; 545, 2. H. 491, I, 1, 2, 3, II, 1, 2, 3; 568, 1.

Inflection: persuādeō; nāvis: bonus (compare): ĭdem.

Order of words: prepositions regularly precede the words which they govern.

Prescribed list:

deinde	profūgit	indūcerentur	ventīs
priusquam	at	hūc	duplex
ascendit	postquam	vēla	namque
clam			

HANNIBAL FLEES FROM CARTHAGE AND TRIES TO
BRING ON ANOTHER WAR

Deinde Mārcō Claudiō Lūciō Fūriō cōsulibus,¹ Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī² grātiā missōs,³ priusquam iis senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam⁴ factā, Poenī nāvis duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequī, misērunt; bona⁵ eius publicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt,⁶ ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, Lūciō Cornēliō Quintō Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fidūciāque⁷ indūcerentur, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliā proficiscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescivērunt,⁸ Māgōnem eādem quā frātrem absentem affēcērunt poenā. Illi dēspērātīs⁹ rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū¹⁰ duplex memoria¹¹ prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulis ipsius interfectum¹² eum scrīptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem paucis nāvibus adversus Rhodiōrum¹³ classem pugnavit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

reor, 2, ratus, <i>think</i>	excio, 4, ivi, itus, <i>call forth</i>
comprehendo, 3, hendi, hensus, <i>seize</i>	poena, ae, f., <i>punishment</i>
publico, 1, confiscae	solvō, 3, solvi, solutus, <i>loose</i>
fundamentum, i, n., <i>foundation</i>	prōdō, 3, didi, ditus, <i>hand down</i>
exsul, ulis, m., f., <i>exile</i>	nafragium, naufragi, n., <i>shipwreck</i>
forte, <i>by chance</i>	servulus, i, m., <i>slave</i>
	scribo, 3, scripsi, scriptus, <i>write</i>

NOTES

¹ cōsulibus: ablative absolute. ² exscendi: ex + poscō; synonym of petō. ³ missōs: understand esse. ⁴ palam: the opposite of clam. ⁵ bona: used as a noun. ⁶ disiēcērunt: observe the composition. ⁷ fiduciā: synonym of fidēs. ⁸ rescivērunt: synonym of cognōscō. ⁹ dēspērātis: dē + spērō. English derivative? ¹⁰ interitū: synonym of mors. ¹¹ memoria: *account*. ¹² interfectum: understand esse, and make eum the subject. ¹³ Rhodiōrum: the people of Rhodes.

Determine from their position whether these words are emphatic: hōs, clam, Carthāginiēnsēs, poenā, pervēnit.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Grammar: A. 409, a: 549; 564; 574. B. 218, 8; 286, 2; 296, 2; 300, 1. G. 405; 586; 550, 2; 467. H. 477, II; 598; 567, I; 649, II.

Inflection: capio; cōsiliū; simulāns; quisquam.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity normally precede their nouns.

Prescribed list:

dēderētur	nisi	sciēbat	tolleret
potestātem	prōvidisset	exisse	quisquam
cōferret	enim	complet	conciliābat
callidissimus	portābat	dēpōnit	

HANNIBAL CONCEALS HIS TREASURE

Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod¹ sine dubiō accidisset, si sui fēcisset potestātem,² Crētā ad Gortyniōs³ vēnit, ut ibi, quō sē cōferret, cōsiderāret. Vidit autem vir⁴ omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam

Crētēnsium⁵: magnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse fāmam. Itaque capit⁶ tāle cōnsilium.⁷ Amphorās complūris complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus p̄ncipibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortunās illōrum⁸ fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis,⁹ statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omnī suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domi abicit.¹⁰ Gortyni templum magnā cūrā¹¹ custōdiunt, nōn tam ā ceteris¹² quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus¹³ iis tolleret sua sēcumque dūceret. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, illūsis Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiam¹⁴ in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Ītaliā, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem¹⁵ cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat ceterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

fugō, 1, <i>put to flight</i>	simulō, 1, <i>pretend</i>
dubius, a, um, <i>doubtful</i>	crēdō, 3, didī, dītus, <i>trust (credence)</i>
avāritia, ae, f., <i>greed (avaricious)</i>	aēneus, a, um, <i>bronze</i>
pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money</i>	prōpatulum, ī, n., <i>open court</i>
fāma, ae, f., <i>report (famous)</i>	custōdiō, 4, īvī, ītus, <i>guard (custody)</i>
tālis, e, <i>such</i>	cōservō, 1, <i>save</i>
amphora, ae, f., <i>jar</i>	illūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsus, <i>make sport of</i>
plumbum, ī, n., <i>lead</i>	ergā, <i>towards</i>
operiō, 4, uī, tus, <i>cover</i>	exerceō, 2, uī, itus, <i>arouse</i>
aurum, ī, n., <i>gold</i>	(ops), opis, f., <i>means</i>
argentum, ī, n., <i>silver</i>	bellicōsus, a, um, <i>warlike</i>

NOTES

- ¹ quod: refers to nē dēderētur. ² suī potestātem: a chance at him.
³ Gortyniōs: people of the city of Gortyna in Crete. ⁴ vir: not the subject of vidit. What then is its syntax? ⁵ Crētēnsium: compare Carthāginiēnsium. ⁶ capit: adopts. ⁷ cōnsilium: what follows explains this.
⁸ illōrum: refers to p̄ncipibus. ⁹ inductis: observe the composition.
¹⁰ abicit: observe the composition; ab = de. ¹¹ cūrā: related to the verb

cūrō. ¹² cēterīs: synonym of reliquī. ¹³ inscientibus: observe the composition. Compare the English "secure" and "insecure." ¹⁴ Prūsiam: Prusias, the king. ¹⁵ quem: not the object of vidēret.

Determine the force of the prefix in *prōvidisset*, *dēpōnit*, *inductis*, *abicit*, *adiungēbat*.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Grammar: A. 349; 563; 564; 569, 2. B. 204, 1; 295, 1; 296, 2; 297, 2. G. 374; 546, 2; 550, 1, 2; 553, 3. H. 450; 451, 1; 565; 567, 1; 571, 1.

Inflection: fiō; domus; facile (compare); suī.

Order of words: the modifying phrase usually precedes the word which it modifies.

Prescribed list:

dum	ausus est	castellō	sēnsit
cāsū	recūsāvit	mūnerī	aliēnō
rēgnō	iūs	aedificārat	priſtinus
dētulit	hospiti	circumdedissent	sūmpsit
īnsidiis			

HOW THE ROMANS BROUGHT ABOUT HANNIBAL'S DEATH

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae¹ Rōmae apud² Titum Quinctium Flāmininum cōsulārem cēnārent, atque, ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex iis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāmininus senātūi dētulit. Patrēs cōnscripti,³ quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine īnsidiis futūrōs existimārent,⁴ lēgātōs in Bithyniam misērunt, in iis Flāmininum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimicissimum⁵ suum sēcum habēret sibi dēderet. His Prūsias negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent quod adversus iūs hospiti esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent⁶; locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs.⁷ Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō, quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī,⁸ idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedifici exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū veniret⁹ quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine

domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibali dixit plūris praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārere. Qui imperāvit eī ut omnis foris¹⁰ aedifici circumiret ac properē¹¹ sibi nūntiaret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāset omnisque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō¹² factum,¹³ sed sē peti neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dimitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habere cōsuērat, sūmpsit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

cōsulāris, is, m., *ex-consul*
 cēnō, 1, *dine*
 vīvus, a, um, *alive*
 numquam, *never*
 negō, 1, *say "no" (negative)*
 comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, *seize*
 scīlicet, *evidently*
 iānuā, ae, f., *door*
 prōspiciō, 3, spexī, spectus, *watch*

appārēō, 2, uī, —, *appear*
 num, *whether*
 obsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *beset*
 vīta, ae, f., *life*
 arbitrium, arbi'trī, n., *will*
 memor, memoris, *mindful*
 venēnum, ī, n., *poison*
 semper, *always*

NOTES

¹ Prūsiae: genitive; Prusias, king of the state in which Hannibal was then living. ² apud: at the house of. ³ patrēs cōscriptī: a term applied to the senators; cōscriptī, *enrolled*. ⁴ quī . . . existimārent: gives a reason for misērunt. ⁵ inimicissimum: in + amicus, *greatest enemy*. ⁶ ipsī . . . comprehenderent: indirect discourse, depending on recūsāvit; comprehenderent represents an imperative in the words of Prusias. ⁷ inventūrōs: in + veniō; in, *upon*. ⁸ mūnerī: dative showing purpose. ⁹ ūsū veniret: = accideret. ¹⁰ foris: synonym of iānuā. ¹¹ properē: synonym of celeriter. ¹² fortuitō: synonym of cāsū. ¹³ factum: understand esse.

Think of English words from accidit, misērunt, peterent, negāre, inventūrōs, prōspiciēns.

EXERCISE XXXIX

Grammar: A. 367: 372; 415; 546. B. 187, II, *a, b*: 224: 288, I, B. G. 346, R. 1; 400; 585. H. 426. 1, 3; 473, 2; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: gerō; adventus; superior: ipse.

Order of words: in the ablative absolute the emphatic word, usually the noun, stands first.

Prescribed list:

marī	occāsione	īsulās	refectae
terrā	laccessivit	statuērunt	renovāre
cessit	paene	etsī	nisi,
nocendī	āmīsissent	statim	trādere
saepe	classe		

HAMILCAR, THE CARTHAGINIAN, AGREES TO PEACE
WITH THE ROMANS, BUT HOPES FOR A CHANCE TO
FIGHT AGAIN

Hamilcar, Hannibalis¹ filius, cognōmine Barca, Carthāginiēnsis, primō Pūnicō bellō, sed temporibus² extrēmīs, admodum adulēscentulus in Siciliā praesse coepit exercituī. Cum³ ante eius adventum et marī et terrā male rēs gererentur Carthāginiēnsium, ipse ubi adfuit numquam hostī cessit neque locum⁴ nocendī dedit, saepeque ē contrariō occāsione datā laccessivit⁵ semperque superior discessit. Quō factō, cum paene omnia in Siciliā Poenī amīsissent, ille Erycem⁶ sic dēfendit ut bellum eō locō gestum nōn vidērētur. Interim Carthāginiēnsēs classe⁷ apud īsulās Aegātēs ā Gāiō Lutātiō, cōsule Rōmānōrum, superatī statuērunt belli facere finem, eamque rem arbitriō permīsērunt Hamilcaris. Ille etsī flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte,⁸ tamen pāci serviendum⁹ putāvit, quod patriam exhaustam sūmptibus¹⁰ diūtius calamitātēs belli ferre nōn posse intellegēbat; sed ita ut statim mente agitāret.¹¹ sī paulum modo rēs essent refectae, bellum renovāre Rōmānōsque armīs persequi¹² dōnicum aut virtūte vicissent aut victi manūs dedissent. Hōc cōsiliō pācem conciliāvit. In quō¹³ tantā fuit ferōciā,¹⁴ cum Catulus

negāret bellum compositūrum¹⁵ nisi ille¹⁶ cum suis, quī Erycem tenērent, armīs relictīs Siciliā dēcēderent, ut succumbente patriā ipse peritūrum sē potius dīxerit¹⁷ quam cum tantō flāgitiō domum rediret; nōn enim suae esse virtūtis¹⁸ arma ā patriā accepta adversus hostis adversāriis trādere. Huius¹⁹ pertināciae cessit Catulus. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

cognōmen, inis, n., <i>surname</i>	dōnicum, <i>until</i>
admodum, <i>mere</i>	conciliō, 1, <i>bring about</i>
male, <i>badly</i>	ferōcia, ae, f., <i>fierceness</i>
adsum, esse, fuī, —, <i>be present</i>	negō, 1, <i>say not</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	compōnō, 3, posuī, positus, <i>bring to an end</i>
semper, <i>always</i>	succumbō, 3, cubuī, —, <i>fall</i>
arbitrium, arbi'trī, n., <i>management</i>	patria, ae, f., <i>country</i>
flagrō, 1, <i>be on fire</i>	pereō, 4, iī, itūrus, <i>perish</i>
serviō, 4, ivī, itum, <i>serve, aim at</i>	potius, <i>rather</i>
exhauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, <i>wear out</i>	flāgitium, flāgi'tī, n., <i>wrongdoing</i>
sūmptus, ūs, m., <i>expense</i>	pertinācia, ae, f., <i>obstinacy</i>
mēns, mentis, f., <i>mind</i>	

NOTES

¹ Hannibalis: not the Hannibal mentioned elsewhere, who was Hamilcar's son. ² temporibus: i. e. huius bellī. ³ cum: concessive. ⁴ locum: = occāsio. ⁵ lacessivit: understand hostis. ⁶ Erycem: *Eryx*, a town in Sicily. ⁷ classe: states the means of superātī. ⁸ cupiditāte: cupidus + tās. ⁹ serviendum: understand sibi. ¹⁰ sūmptibus: states the cause of exhaustam. ¹¹ mente agitāret: nearly equal to putāret, but has also the idea of *intend*. ¹² persequi: composition? ¹³ quō: refers to pācem conciliāvit. ¹⁴ ferōciā: describes the subject of fuit. ¹⁵ compositūrum: understand sē. ¹⁶ ille: i. e. Hamilcar. ¹⁷ ut . . . dīxerit: keep in mind tantā above. ¹⁸ virtūtis: shows possession, the thing possessed being arma . . . trādere. ¹⁹ huius: i. e. Hamilcar.

EXERCISE XL

Grammar: A. 305; 404; 540, 1; 549. B. 250; 219; 286, 1, 2. G. 614; 408; 540; 586. H. 396; 475; 588, 1; 598.

Inflection: oppugnō; imperātor; plūs; hīc.

Order of words: a noun depending on another noun usually stands next to it, either before or after it, according to the emphasis.

Prescribed list:

aliter	perterritī	amplius	reddidit
namque	impetrārunt	compulit	reperiret
parī	prope	valentissima	praetereā
nisi	mūrīs	restituit	mōrēs
vīgintī			

HAMILCAR FINDS CARTHAGE BESET BY ENEMIES,
BUT DEFEATS THEM AND THEN SETS OUT FOR
SPAIN

At ille ut Carthāginem vēnit, multō aliter ac¹ spērārat² rem publicam sē habentem³ cognōvit. Namque diūturnitāte⁴ externi malī tantum exārsit intestinum bellum ut numquam in parī periculō fuerit Carthāgō, nisi cum delēta est. Primō mercennārī mīlitēs quibus adversus Rōmānōs ūsī erant dēscivērunt, quōrum numerus erat vīgintī milium. Iī tōtam abaliēnārunt Āfricam, ipsam Carthāginem oppugnārunt. Quibus malīs adeō⁵ sunt Poenī perterritī ut etiam auxilia ab Rōmānīs petierint; eaque⁶ impetrārunt. Sed extrēmō, cum prope iam ad dēspērātiōnem⁷ pervēnissent, Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt. Is nōn solum hostis ā mūrīs Carthāginis remōvit, cum amplius centum milia facta essent armātōrum, sed etiam eō⁸ compulit ut locōrum angustiīs clausī plūrēs famē quam ferrō⁹ interirent.¹⁰ Omnia oppida abaliēnāta, in iīs Uticam atque Hippōnem, valentissima tōtius Āfricae, restituit patriae. Neque eō fuit contentus, sed etiam finis imperī prōpāgāvit,¹¹ tōtā Āfricā¹² tantum otium¹³ reddidit ut nullum in eā bellum vidērētur multis annīs fuisse. Rēbus his ex sententiā peractīs fidentī animō atque infestō Rōmānīs, quō¹⁴ facilius causam bellandī

reperiret, effecit ut imperator cum exercitū in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem. Erat praeterea cum eo adulescens illustris, formosus, Hasdrubal. Huic ille filiam suam in matrimonium dedit. De hoc ideō mentionem fecimus, quod Hamilcare occiso ille exercitū praefuit resque magnas gessit, et princeps largitione vetustos¹⁵ pervertit mores Carthaginiensium, eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitū accipit imperium. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

diurnitas, ātis, f., length	famēs, is, f., hunger
malum, ī, n., misfortune	patria, ae, f., country
exardescō, 3, arsi, —, blaze forth	fidēs, fidentis, confident
intestinus, a, um, civil	infestus, a, um, hostile
numquam, never	adulescens, centis, m., youth
dēleō, 2, ēvī, ētus, destroy	illustris, e, distinguished
mercennarius, a, um, hired	formosus, a, um, handsome
dēsciscō, 3, scivī, —, desert	matrimonium, matrimōnī, n., marriage
abalienō, 1, make hostile	ideō, for this reason
claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, hem in	largitiō, ōnis, f., lavish giving
	pervertō, 3, vertī, versus, corrupt

NOTES

- ¹ ac: than. ² spērārat: note the shortened form. There are others in the passage. ³ sē habentem: in a condition. ⁴ diurnitate: states the cause of exarsit. ⁵ adeō: synonym of ita. ⁶ ea: refers to auxilia. ⁷ dēspēratiōnem: dē + spērō + tiō. ⁸ eō: to such a point. ⁹ ferrō: used for gladius. ¹⁰ interirent: nearly equivalent here to interficerentur. ¹¹ prōpāgāvit: synonym of augeō. ¹² Africā: in is omitted with tōtā. ¹³ ōtium: nearly equivalent to pāx. ¹⁴ quō: introduces a purpose clause when the clause contains a comparative. ¹⁵ vetustōs: synonym of vetus.



GALLIC SWORD-BLADE

EXERCISE XLI

Grammar: A. 376: 578: 579; 580. B. 188, 1: 313: 314, 1; 331, 1. G. 350, 2: 648: 650. H. 425, 4: 641: 642: 643.

Inflection: cōgō; classis; vetus; suus.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is (1) subject, (2) modifiers of subject, (3) modifiers of verb, (4) verb.

Prescribed list:

ulteriōrem	complēverat	mandātis	castellis
quō	adulēscētis	portās	īstituerant
septem	officia	fidē	reficiēbant

CÆSAR FINDS THAT THE CITY OF MASSILIA IS MAKING
READY TO OPPOSE HIM

Cæsar and Pompey once had been friends. Indeed, Pompey had married Cæsar's daughter Julia, and had been closely associated with him in some of his greatest undertakings. But the changing circumstances of the times and Julia's death had weakened the ties that once bound them, and they were now enemies. Cæsar has just been in Rome, and through the senate has tried to bring about a reconciliation with Pompey, but in vain.

Caesar ab urbe proficiscitur atque in ulteriōrem Galliam pervenit. Quō cum vēnisset, cognōscit missum¹ in Hispāniam² ā Pompēiō Vibullium Rūfum, quem paucīs ante diēbus Corfiniō³ captum⁴ ipse dīmiserat; profectum item Domitium⁵ ad occupandam Massiliam⁶ nāvibus āctuariis septem, quās Igili⁷ et in Cosānō⁸ ā privātis coāctās servīs, libertīs, colōnis suis complēverat; praemissōs etiam lēgātōs Massiliēnsis⁹ domum, nōbilis adulēscētis, quōs ab urbe discēdēs Pompēius erat adhortātus¹⁰ nē nova Caesaris officia veterum suōrum¹¹ beneficiōrum in eōs memoriam expellerent. Quibus mandātis acceptis Massiliēnsēs portās Caesarī¹² clausurant; Albicōs, barbarōs hominēs, quī in eōrum fidē antiquitus erant montisque suprā Massiliam incolēbant, ad sē vocāverant; frūmentum ex finitimis regiōnibus atque ex omnibus castellis in urbem convexerant; armōrum officinās in urbe īstituerant; mūrōs, portās, classem reficiēbant. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 33, 34

VOCABULARY

āctuārius, a, um, <i>swif</i>	antīquitus, <i>in olden times</i>
servus, ī, m., <i>slave</i>	vocō, 1, <i>summon</i>
libertus, ī, m., <i>freedman</i>	convehō, 3, <i>vexī, vectus, collect</i>
colōnus, ī, m., <i>colonist</i>	officīna, ae, f., <i>manufactory</i>
claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, <i>shut</i>	

NOTES

¹ *missum*: understand *esse*. Why? ² *Hispaniam*: *Spain*. ³ *Corfiniō*: a town in central Italy. ⁴ *captum*: translate by a temporal clause. ⁵ *Domitium*: an adherent of Pompey, afterwards in command of the defense of Massilia. ⁶ *Massiliam*: *Marseilles*. ⁷ *Igili*: a small island off the coast of Italy, not far from Rome. ⁸ *Cosānō*: the territory belonging to Cosa, a town near the coast, northwest of Rome. ⁹ *Massiliēnsis*: *Massilia + ēnsis, -ian*. ¹⁰ *adhortātus*: = *hortātus*. ¹¹ *suōrum*: refers to Pompey. ¹² *Caesari*: dative of reference.

Observe the force of the prefix in *dīmiserat*, *praemissōs*, *expellerent*, *reficiēbant*.

EXERCISE XLII

Grammar: A. 343, *c*: 452, 1; 484, *a, b*. B. 198, 3; 330: 267, 2, 3. G. 366, 2; 422: 509; 510. H. 439, 5; 615; 543; 544; 545.

Inflection: *augeō*; *vīs*; *pār*; *is*.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

agit	dēbēre	pār	iuvāre
initium	voluntātī	quoque	portibus
oriātur	utra	neutrum	

CESAR TRIES TO GAIN THE SUPPORT OF THE
MASSILIANS, BUT THEY DECIDE TO REMAIN
NEUTRAL

Ēvocat ad sē Caesar Massiliā quīndecim p̄mōs.¹ Cum hīs agit nē initium īferendī bellī ab Massiliēnsibus oriātur²: dēbēre eōs Ītalīae tōtīus auctōritātem sequī potius quam ūnīus hominis voluntātī obtemperāre. Reliqua quae ad eōrum s̄anandās mentīs³ pertinēre

arbitrābātur⁴ commemorat. Cuius orātiōnem lēgātī domum referunt atque ex auctōritāte haec Caesari renūntiant: intellegere sē dīvisum esse⁵ populum Rōmānum in duās partīs. Neque suī iūdicī⁶ neque suarum esse virium discernere utra pars iūstiōrem habeat causam. Prīncipēs vērō esse eārum partium Gnaeum Pompēium et Gāium Caesarem, patrōnōs civitātis; quōrum alter⁷ agrōs Volcārum⁸ Arecomicōrum et Helviōrum pūblicē iis concesserit, alter bellō victōs Sallyas⁹ attribuerit vectigāliaque auxerit. Quārē paribus eōrum beneficiis¹⁰ parem sē quoque voluntātem tribuere dēbere et neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvāre aut urbe aut portibus recipere. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 35

VOCABULARY

ēvocō, 1, *summon*

potius, *rather*

obtemperō, 1, *heed*

sānō, 1, *heal*

commemorō, 1, *mention*

iūdicium, iūdi'cī, n., *judgment*

discernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, *decide*

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*

vectigal, ālis, n., *revenue*

NOTES

¹ primōs: understand civīs. ² oriātur: states the purpose of agit.
³ eōrum sānandās mentīs: *bringing them to their senses*; mentīs is a synonym of animus. ⁴ arbitrābātur: synonym of putō. ⁵ dīvisum esse: depends on intellegere. ⁶ iūdicī: shows possession. ⁷ alter: Pompey. ⁸ Volcārum, etc.: tribes of Gaul. ⁹ Sallyas: a tribe dwelling not far from Massilia. Accusative plural. ¹⁰ paribus eōrum beneficiis: gives a reason for parem sē voluntātem tribuere dēbere.

Observe the emphasis in the following phrases: inferendī bellī, Ītaliae tōtius, ūnīus hominis, iūstiōrem causam.

EXERCISE XLIII

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 420, 1; 423, 1; 503. B. 201, 2; 227, 2, a; 231; 339, 1, 2. G. 369; 410; 393; 427. H. 441; 489, 1; 487; 623; 626; 628.

Inflection: ūtor; portus; reliquus; quī.

Order of words: a prepositional phrase usually limits a word following it.

Prescribed list:

summa	ubīque	māteriā	obsidiōnem
administrandī	portum	armandās	turrīs
permittitur	dēdūcunt	reficiendās	vīneās
onerāriās	parum	commeātūs	caesa est

DOMITIUS REACHES MASSILIA AND MAKES PREPARATIONS FOR ITS DEFENSE

Haec dum inter eōs aguntur, Domitius¹ nāvibus Massiliam pervenit atque ab iīs² receptus urbī praeficitur; summa eī belli administrandī permittitur. Eius imperiō classem quōqueversus dīmittunt; onerāriās nāvis, quās ubique possunt,³ dēprehendunt atque in portum dēdūcunt, parum clāvīs⁴ aut māteriā atque armamentis instrūctis ad reliquās armandās⁵ reficiendāsque ūtuntur; frūmentī quod⁶ inventum est, in pūblicum cōferunt; reliquās mercēs commeātūsque ad obsidiōnem urbis, sī accidat, reservant. Quibus iniūriīs⁷ permōtus Caesar legiōnēs trīs Massiliam addūcit; turrīs vīneāsque ad oppugnātiōnem urbis agere, nāvis longās Arelāte⁸ numerō duodecim facere instituit. Quibus effectis armātisque diēbus trīgintā, ā quā diē māteria caesa est, adductisque Massiliam, hīs Decimum Brūtum praeficit, Gāium Trebōnium lēgātum ad oppugnātiōnem Massiliae relinquit. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 36

VOCABULARY

quōqueversus, <i>in every direction</i>	armāmentum, ī, n., <i>equipment</i>
dēprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, <i>catch suddenly</i>	inveniō, 4, vēnī, ventus, <i>come upon, find</i>
clāvus, ī, m., <i>nail</i>	merx, mercis, f., <i>merchandise</i>

NOTES

- ¹ Domitius: an adherent of Pompey. ² iīs: refers to the Massilians.
³ possunt: understand an infinitive from dēprehendunt. ⁴ clāvīs: answers the question "with what" about instrūctis, which depends on ūtuntur.

⁵ *armandās*, etc.: states the purpose of *ūtuntur*. ⁶ *quod*: a relative limited by *frūmentī*. ⁷ *iniūriūs*: refers to what precedes. ⁸ *Arelāte*: *Arelas*, a town not far from Massilia. What fact does it state about *facere*?

Complete from the above passage the expressions of which each of the following phrases forms a part: *ab iis*, *in portum*, *in pūblicum*, *ad obsidiōnem*, *ā quā diē*, *ad oppugnātiōnem*.

EXERCISE XLIV

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 406; 409; 418. B. 201, 2; 217, 1; 218; 226. G. 369; 398; 401; 397. H. 441; 471; 476; 480.

Inflection: *terreō*; *mūnus*; *minor*; *ipse*.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually in the preceding clause, and is often the word immediately before the relative.

Prescribed list:

<i>hūc</i>	<i>impōnunt</i>	<i>īnsulam</i>	<i>centuriōnēs</i>
<i>classis</i>	<i>praemiīs</i>	<i>statiōnēs</i>	<i>mūneris</i>
<i>suprā</i>	<i>prōcēdunt</i>	<i>īnferior</i>	<i>ferreās</i>

DOMITIUS AND BRUTUS, CAESAR'S LIEUTENANT, PREPARE FOR A NAVAL BATTLE

Massiliēnsēs ūsi¹ Lūcī Domitī cōnsiliō nāvis longās expediunt numerō septendecim, quārum erant ūndecim tēctae.² Multa hūc minōra nāvigia addunt, ut ipsā multitūdine nostra classis terreātur. Magnum numerum sagittāriōrum, magnum Albicōrum,³ dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, impōnunt atque hōs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque incitant. Certās sibi dēposcit⁴ nāvis Domitius atque hās colōnis⁵ pāstōribusque, quōs sēcum addūxerat, complet. Sic omnibus rēbus⁶ instrūctā classe, magnā fidūciā⁷ ad nostrās nāvis prōcēdunt, quibus praeerat Decimus Brūtus. Hae ad īnsulam, quae est contrā Massiliam, statiōnēs obtinēbant. Erat multō īnferior numerō nāvium Brūtus; sed ēlēctōs ex omnibus legiōnibus fortissimōs virōs, antesignānōs, centuriōnēs, Caesar eī classī attribuerat,⁸ qui sibi id mūneris⁹ dēpoposcerant. Hi manūs ferreās atque harpagōnēs parāverant.

VOCABULARY

tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, <i>cover</i>	pāstor, ōris, m., <i>shepherd</i>
nāvigium, nāvi'gī, n., <i>boat</i>	ēligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>select</i>
terreō, 2, uī, itus, <i>frighten</i>	antesignānus, ī, m., <i>veteran</i>
pollicitātiō, ōnis, f., <i>promise</i>	harpagō, ōnis, m., <i>grappling hook</i>
colōnus, ī, m., <i>colonist</i>	

NOTES

¹ ūsī: what case depends on this word? ² tēctae: *decked*. ³ Albi-cōrum: a tribe dwelling not far from Massilia. ⁴ dēposcit: synonym of poscit. ⁵ colōnis: answers the question "with what" about complet. ⁶ rēbus: limits instrūctā. ⁷ fidūciā: synonym of fidēs. It answers the question "how" about prōcēdunt. ⁸ attribuerat: nearly synonymous with praeficiō. ⁹ mūneris: limits id.

Think of English words from numerō, minōra, pāstōribus, complet, ēlēctōs, and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE XLV

Grammar: A. 208, d: 418: 504. B. 256, 3; 226; 338, 1, a. G. 208, 2; 397; 428. H. 302, 6; 480; 626.

Inflection: impediō; diēs; uterque; noster.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

Prescribed list:

portū	celeritatē	prōductā	aequō
utrimque	gubernātōrum	propius	bīnīs
cēdēbant	excipiēbant	perītīs	obiciēbant
modo	quoad	onerāriīs	compellunt
operam	licēbat		

THE NAVAL BATTLE BETWEEN THE MASSILIANS AND THE ROMANS

Ita cognitō hostium adventū suās nāvis ex portū Rōmānī ēdūcunt, cum Massiliēnsibus cōfligunt.¹ Pugnātum est utrimque fortissimē atque ācerrimē; neque multum Albici² nostris virtūte³

cēdēbant, hominēs asperī et montānī⁴ et exercitātī in armīs⁵; atque hī modo dīgressī ā Massiliēnsibus recentem eōrum pollicitātiōnem animīs continēbant,⁶ pāstōrēsque Domiti spē libertātis excitātī sub oculis domini suam probāre operam studēbant. Ipsī Massiliēnsēs et celeritāte nāvium et scientiā⁷ gubernātōrum cōnfisī nostrōs ēlūdēbant impetūsque eōrum nōn excipiēbant et, quoad licēbat lātīore ūtī spatiō, prōductā longius aciē circumvenire nostrōs aut plūribus nāvibus adorīrī singulās,⁸ sī possent, contendēbant; cum propius⁹ erat necessariō ventum, ab scientiā gubernātōrum atque artificiis ad virtūtem montānōrum cōnfugiēbant. Nostrī cum¹⁰ minus exercitātis rēmigibus minusque perītis gubernātōribus ūtēbantur, quī repente ex onerāriis nāvibus erant prōductī, tum etiam tarditāte¹¹ et gravitāte¹² nāvium impediēbantur. Itaque, dum locus comminus pugnandī darētur, aequō animō singulās bīnis nāvibus obiciēbant, atque in hostium nāvis trāscendēbant,¹³ et, magnō numerō Albicōrum et pāstōrum interfectō, partem nāvium dēprimunt, nōnnūllās cum hominibus capiunt, reliquās in portum compellunt. Eō diē nāvēs Massiliēnsium, cum iis quae sunt captae, intereunt novem.¹⁴ — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 57, 58

VOCABULARY

asper, era, erum, *rough*
 exercitō, 1, *train*
 dīgredior, 3, gressus, *depart*
 pollicitātiō, ōnis, f., *promise*
 pāstor, ōris, m., *shepherd*
 oculus, ī, m., *eye*
 dominus, ī, m., *master*
 ēlūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsus, *escape*

artificium, artifi'cī, n., *device, trick*
 cōnfugiō, 3, fūgī, —, *flee for refuge*
 rēmex, igis, m., *rower*
 repente, *suddenly*
 comminus, *at close quarters*
 dēprimō, 3, pressī, pressus, *sink*
 intereō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*

NOTES

¹ cōnfligunt: synonym of pugnō. ² Albicī: a tribe dwelling near Masilia. ³ virtūte: answers the question "in what respect" about cēdēbant. ⁴ montānī: mōns + ānus, *belonging to*. ⁵ hominēs . . . armīs: this tells why the statement neque . . . cēdēbant is so. ⁶ continēbant: *kept*.

⁷ **scientiā**: **sciēns** (**sciō**) + **ia**. ⁸ **singulās**: what word is understood?
⁹ **propius**: it was better for the Massilians to fight without the risk of being boarded. ¹⁰ **cum**: *not only*. ¹¹ **tarditāte**: **tardus** + **tās**. ¹² **gravitāte**: think of the derivation. ¹³ **trāscendēbant**: compare the verb **ascendō** and note the prefix **trāns**. ¹⁴ **novem**: with **nāvēs**.

Think of English words from **cōnfigunt**, **cēdēbant**, **excitātī**, **scientiā**, **cōnfisī**, **circumvenīre**, **artificiis**, and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE XLVI

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 383; 384; 506. B. 191, 2; 192, 1; 338, 3. G. 356, N. 1; 359; 432, R. H. 433; 434, 2; 628.

Inflection: hortor; porta; certior; hīc.

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is a place of emphasis.

Prescribed list:

aggerem	aditus	subsidiō	cursum
vīneās	valle	appulsīs	magnopere
turrīs	māteriam	repentīnum	hortātur
portuī	exstruit	dēdūcit	rūrsus
portam	classe		

THE ROMANS PREPARE TO STORM MASSILIA

Dum haec¹ in Hispāniā geruntur, Gāius Trebōnius lēgātus, quī ad oppugnātiōnem Massiliae relictus erat, duābus ex² partibus aggerem, vīneās, turrisque ad oppidum agere instituit. Ūna erat proxima portuī nāvālibusque, altera ad portam quā est aditus ex Galliā atque Hispāniā, ad id mare quod adiacet ad ōstium Rhodanī. Massilia enim ferē ex tribus oppidi partibus marī alluitur; reliqua quārta est, quae aditum habeat ab terrā. Huius quoque spatī pars ea quae ad arcem pertinet, locī nātūrā et valle altissimā mūnita, longam et difficilem³ habet oppugnātiōnem. Ad ea perficienda opera Gāius Trebōnius magnam iūmentōrum atque hominum multitudinem ex omnī prōvinciā vocat⁴; vimina māteriamque comportārī iubet. Quibus comparātis rēbus aggerem in altitudinem pedum octōgintā exstruit. Interim Lūcius Nāsidius, ab Gnaeō

Pompēiō cum classe nāvium sēdecim, in quibus paucae erant aerātae, Lūciō Domitiō Massiliēnsibusque subsidiō missus, fretō⁵ Siciliae imprūdente atque inopinante Cūriōne⁶ pervehitur, appulsi-
 sique Messānam⁷ nāvibus, atque inde propter repentinum terrōrem
 prīncipum⁸ ac senātūs fugā factā, nāvem ex nāvālibus eōrum dēdūcit.
 Hāc adiūctā⁹ ad reliquās nāvis cursum Massiliam versus¹⁰ perficit,
 praemissāque clam nāviculā¹¹ Domitium Massiliēnsisque dē suō
 adventū certiōrēs facit eōsque magnopere hortātur ut rūsus cum
 Brūti¹² classe additis suis auxiliis¹³ cōnfligant.

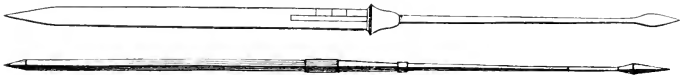
DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 1, 3

VOCABULARY

nāvālia, ium, n., dockyard	aerātus, a, um, bronze-covered
mare, is, n., sea (marine)	fretum, ī, n., strait
adiaceō, 2, uī, —, lie near (adjacent)	imprūdēns, imprūdētis, off one's guard
ōstium, ōstī, n., mouth	inopināns, inopinantis, not ex- pecting
alluō, 3, uī, —, wash	cōnfligō, 3, flīxī, flīctus, contend with (conflict)
arx, arcis, f., citadel	
iūmentum, ī, n., beast of burden	
vīmen, inis, n., withe	

NOTES

- ¹ haec: the defeat of Cæsar's enemies. ² ex: on. ³ difficilem: compare with difficultās and with facilis. ⁴ vocat: synonym of appellō.
⁵ fretō: shows place. ⁶ Cūriōne: the proprætor of Sicily. ⁷ Messānam: the city of Messina. ⁸ prīncipum: with fugā. ⁹ adiūctā: ad + iungō.
¹⁰ versus: toward. This preposition follows the word which it governs.
¹¹ nāviculā: nāvis + cula, little. ¹² Brūti: the commander of Cæsar's fleet. ¹³ additis . . . auxiliis: states a reason for cōnfligant.



PILA

EXERCISE XLVII

Grammar: A. 349, *a*; 452, 1; 506; 563. B. 204, 1; 330; 338, 3; 295, 1. G. 374; 422; 432, R.; 546. H. 450; 451; 628; 565.

Inflection: contendō; tempus; superus (compare).

Order of words: an emphatic genitive depending on an adjective is usually placed before it.

Prescribed list:

refēcerat	dēfuit	gubernātōrum	iniectīs
remānserat	paulō	nactī	classe
prōiectī	paulātim	ferreīs	profūgit

BRUTUS, AT THE HEAD OF THE ROMAN FLEET, ENGAGES
BATTLE WITH THE SHIPS OF THE MASSILIANS

Eōdem¹ Brūtus contendit auctō nāvium numerō. Nam ad eās quae factae erant Arelāte² per Caesarem captivae Massiliēnsium accesserant sex. Hās superiōribus diēbus refēcerat atque omnibus rēbus instrūxerat. Itaque suōs cohortātus, quōs³ integrōs superāvissent, ut victōs contemnerent, plēnus speī bonae atque animi adversus eōs proficiscitur. Facile erat ex castris Gāi Trebōnī atque omnibus superiōribus locīs prōspicere in urbem, ut⁴ omnis iuventūs, quae in oppidō remānserat, omnēsque superiōris aetātis cum liberis atque uxōribus pūblicisque custōdiis aut ex mūrō ad caelum manūs tenderent,⁵ aut templa deōrum immortalium adirent et ante simulācra prōiecti victōriam ab his exposcerent.⁶ Commissō proeliō Massiliēnsibus⁷ rēs nūlla ad virtūtem dēfuit; sed memorēs⁸ eōrum praeceptōrum quae paulō ante ab suis accēperant, hōc⁹ animō dēcertābant ut nūllum aliud tempus ad cōnandum habitūrī vidērentur. Diductisque¹⁰ nostris paulātim nāvibus et artificiō gubernātōrum et mōbilitātī nāvium locus dabātur, et sī quandō¹¹ nostrī facultātem nactī ferreīs manibus¹² iniectīs nāvem religāverant, undique suis labōrantibus¹³ succurrēbant. Ex Massiliēnsium classe quinque sunt dēpressae, quattuor captae, ūna cum Nāsidiānis profūgit.

VOCABULARY

integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh</i>	custōdia, ae, f., <i>guard</i> (custody)
contemnō, 3, temp̄sī, temptus, <i>despise</i>	caelum, ī, n., <i>sky</i>
plēnus, a, um, <i>full</i> (plenty)	deus, ī, m., <i>god</i>
prōspiciō, 3. spexī, spectus, <i>look forth</i>	simulācrum, ī, n., <i>image</i>
iuventūs, ūtis, f., <i>youth</i> (juvenile)	praeceptum, ī, n., <i>order</i>
aetās, ātis, f., <i>age</i>	artificium, artifi'cī, n., <i>skill</i>
uxor, ōris, f., <i>wife</i>	mōbilitās, ātis, f., <i>moving</i>
	religō, ī, <i>grapple</i>
	succurrō, 3, curri, cursum, <i>rush to help</i>

NOTES

¹ eōdem: i.e. to Taurois, a fortress of the Massilians. ² Arelāte: *Arelas*, a town near Massilia. ³ quōs: understand eōs as the antecedent, with which victōs agrees. ⁴ ut: *how*. ⁵ tenderent: think of the compound extenderent. ⁶ exposcerent: synonym of poscō. ⁷ Massiliēnsibus: depends on dēfuit. ⁸ memorēs: adjective. Think of memoria. ⁹ hōc: *such*. ¹⁰ diductis: dī, *apart*, + dūcō. ¹¹ quandō: *at any time*. ¹² manibus: *prongs*, i.e. like hooked fingers. ¹³ labōrantibus: translate by a clause.

Observe the force of the prefix in *refēcerat*, *remānserat*, *adirent*, *prōiecti*, *dēfuit*, *accēperant*.

EXERCISE XLVIII

Grammar: A. 382. 1; 504; 558; 563. B. 191. 2; 338. 1; 295. 1, 3. G. 356; 428; 555. 1; 546. H. 433; 626; 595, 2; 565.

Inflection: ferō; opus; nūllus.

Order of words: a complementary infinitive usually precedes the verb on which it depends.

Prescribed list:

legiōnāriīs	humilem	moram	docent
administrābant	hinc	quōminus	praedae
crēbrīs	saxa	nūtum	generis
ēruptiōnibus	īnfima	vēstigiō	prōnūntiantur
turrim			

THE ROMANS BUILD A TOWER AND UNDERMINE
A TURRET OF THE MASSILIANS, WHO PLEAD FOR
MERCY

Massiliēnsēs nihilō¹ sētius² ad dēfēnsiōnem³ urbis reliqua appa-
rāre⁴ coepērunt. Est animadversum ab legiōnāriis quī dextram
partem operis administrābant, ex crēbris hostium ēruptiōnibus,
magnō sibi esse praesidiō posse sī ibi prō castellō ac receptāculō
turrim ex latere sub mūrō fēcissent. Quam primō ad repentinōs
incursūs humilem parvamque fēcērunt. Hūc sē referēbant; hinc,
sī qua maior oppresserat vīs, prōpugnābant⁵; hinc ad repellendum
et prōsequendum hostem prōcurrēbant. Postea vērō, ut⁶ est rērum
omnium magister ūsus,⁷ inventum est⁸ magnō esse ūsuī posse sī
haec esset in altitūdinem turris ēlāta.⁹ Id perfectum est. Ex eā
turrī mūsculum pedēs sexāgintā longum ad hostium turrim mū-
rumque facere instituērunt. Hoc opus omne tēctum vineīs ad
turrim hostium admovent, ut aedificiō iungātur. Quō malō per-
territū subitō oppidāni¹⁰ saxa in mūsculum dēvolvunt. Interim sub
mūsculō militēs infima saxa turris hostium convellunt. Nōn datur
libera mūrī dēfendendī facultās. Complūribus lapidibus turrī sub-
ductis repentinā ruīnā pars eius turris concidit, cum hostēs urbis
direptiōne perterriti inermēs ad lēgātōs atque exercitum supplicēs
manūs tendunt. Quā novā rē oblātā¹¹ omnis administratiō¹² belli
cōsistit militēsque āversī ā proeliō ad studium audiendī et cog-
nōscendī feruntur. Ubi hostēs ad lēgātōs exercitumque pervēnērunt,
ūniversi sē ad pedēs prōiciunt; ōrant ut adventus Caesaris expec-
tētur. Captam¹³ suam urbem vidēre¹⁴; opera perfecta, turrim
subrutam; itaque ab dēfēnsiōne dēsistere. Nūllam exoriri¹⁵ moram
posse quōminus,¹⁶ cum vēnisset, sī imperāta¹⁷ nōn facerent ad
nūtum, ē vēstigiō diriperentur.¹⁸ Docent, sī omninō turris conci-
disset, nōn posse militēs continēri quā spē praedae in urbem
irrumperent urbemque dēlērent. Haec atque eiusdem generis complūra,
ut ab hominibus doctis,¹⁹ magnā cum misericordiā flētūque²⁰
prōnūntiantur. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 8, 10, 12

VOCABULARY

receptāculum, ī, n., <i>place of refuge</i>	convellō, 3, vellī, vulsus, <i>loosen</i>
later, eris, m., <i>brick</i>	concidō, 3, cidī, —, <i>collapse</i>
incursus, ūs, m., <i>onset</i>	direptiō, ōnis, f., <i>pillage</i>
prōcurrō, 3, currī, cursum, <i>run forth</i>	tendō, 3, tetendī, tentus, <i>extend</i>
magister, trī, m., <i>master, teacher</i>	subruō, 3, ruī, rutilus, <i>undermine</i>
mūsculus, ī, m., <i>covered passageway</i>	urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>
tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, <i>protect</i>	irrupō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, <i>burst into</i>
vīnea, ae, f., <i>shed</i>	dēleō, 2, lēvī, lētus, <i>destroy</i>
dēvolvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, <i>roll down</i>	miserīcordia, ae, f., <i>wretchedness</i>

NOTES

¹ nihilō: = nihil. ² sētius: = minus. ³ dēfēnsiōnem: dēfendō + tiō.
⁴ apparāre: ad + parō. ⁵ prōpugnābant: observe the prefix. ⁶ ut: as.
⁷ ūsus: *experience*. ⁸ inventum est: in, upon, + veniō. English derivative?
⁹ ēlātā esset: ex + ferō. ¹⁰ oppidāni: oppidum + ānus, *belonging to*.
¹¹ oblātā: from offerō. English derivative? ¹² administrātiō: administrō + tiō.
¹³ captam: indirect discourse depending on vidēre. ¹⁴ vidēre: indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying implied in ōrant. ¹⁵ exoriri: synonym of orior. ¹⁶ quōminus: *so that . . . not*. ¹⁷ imperāta: neuter participle of imperō, used as a noun. ¹⁸ diriperentur: the same root is found in the noun direptiō. ¹⁹ doctis: *learned*, ironical with ut. ²⁰ flētū: a verbal noun from fleō.

EXERCISE XLIX

Grammar: A. 410; 531; 546; 558. B. 218, 1; 282, 1; 288, 1, B; 295, 3. G. 407; 545, 1, 3; 585; 555, 1. H. 477; 568; 600, II, 1; 595, 2.

Inflection: possum; turris; quīdam; aegrē (compare).

Order of words: the adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it modifies.

Prescribed list:

dēdūcunt	at	ventō	nactī
oppugnātiōne	occāsiōnem	sagittīs	aggerem
genere	aliquot	fugientīs	ēruptiōne
remittunt	portīs	tempestātis	reficere

THE MASSILIANS DISREGARD THE TRUCE AND SET FIRE
TO THE SIEGEWORKS OF THE ROMANS

Quibus rēbus¹ commōti lēgātī militēs ex opere dēducunt, oppugnātiōne dēsistunt; operibus custōdiās relinquunt. Indūtiarum quōdam genere misericordiā² factō adventus Caesaris exspectātur. Nūllum ex mūrō, nūllum ā nostrīs mittitur tēlum; ut³ rē cōfectā, omnēs cūram et diligentiam remittunt. Caesar enim per litterās Trebōniō magnō opere⁴ mandāverat nē per vim oppidum expugnārī paterētur, nē gravius permōti militēs et dēfectiōnis odiō et contemptiōne sui⁵ et diūtīnō⁶ labōre omnis pūberēs interficerent; quod⁷ sē factūrōs minābantur, aegrēque tunc sunt retenti quin oppidum irrumperent, graviterque eam rem tulērunt, quod stesisse per Trebōnium quōminus oppidō potīrentur vidēbātur. At hostēs sine fidē tempus atque occāsionem fraudis ac doli quaerunt, interiectisque⁸ aliquot diēbus, subitō meridiānō tempore, cum alius discessisset, alius ex diūtīnō labōre in ipsīs operibus quiētī sē dedisset, arma vērō omnia reposita⁹ contēctaque essent, portis forās ērumpunt,¹⁰ secundō magnōque ventō ignem operibus inferunt. Nostrī repentinā fortunā permōti arma quae possunt arripiunt; aliī ex castris sēsē incitant. Fit in hostis impetus eōrum, sed dē mūrō sagittīs tormentisque fugientis persequi¹¹ prohibentur. Ita multōrum mēnsium labor hostium perfidiā et vī tempestātis pūctō temporis interiit. Temptāvērunt hoc idem Massiliēnsēs posterō diē. Eandem nocti tempestātem maiōre cum fiduciā¹² ad alteram turrim aggeremque ēruptiōne pugnāvērunt multumque ignem intulērunt. Sed ut superioris temporis contentiōnem¹³ nostrī omnem remiserant,¹⁴ ita proximī diēi cāsū admoniti¹⁵ omnia ad dēfēnsiōnem parāverant. Itaque multis interfectis reliquōs infectā¹⁶ rē in oppidum reppulērunt. Trebōnius autem ea quae sunt āmissa multō maiōre militum studiō administrāre et reficere instituit. Nam ubi tantōs suōs labōrēs cecidisse vidērunt, aggerem novī generis aequā ferē altitudīne fecerunt. Celeriter rēs administrātur. Portae ēruptiōnis causā in mūrō relinquuntur. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 13, 14, 15

VOCABULARY

custōdia, ae, f., <i>guard</i>	dolus, ī, m., <i>trickery</i>
indūtia, ārum, f., <i>truce</i>	meridiānus, a, um, <i>of midday</i>
miserīcordia, ae, f., <i>pity</i>	contegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, <i>cover</i>
cūra, ae, f., <i>care</i>	forās, <i>forth</i>
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., <i>revolt</i>	arripiō, 3, ripuī, reptus, <i>seize</i>
odium, odī, n., <i>strong dislike</i>	tormentum, ī, n., <i>hurling machine</i>
pūberēs, um, m., <i>adults</i>	perfidia, ae, f., <i>treachery</i>
minor, 1, <i>threaten</i>	pūnctum, ī, n., <i>moment</i>
irrupō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, <i>break into</i>	intereō, 4, iī, itum, <i>perish</i>
stō, 1, steti, statum, <i>stand, (with per)</i> <i>stand to one's account</i>	

NOTES

¹ quibus rēbus: the fall of a great tower which the Massilians had erected.
² misericordiā: states the cause of factō. ³ ut: as. ⁴ magnō opere: has the force of an adverb. ⁵ suī: shown to them. To whom does suī refer?
⁶ diūtinō: diū + tinus, a time suffix. ⁷ quod: refers to the preceding clause. ⁸ interiectis: observe the composition. ⁹ reposita: observe the composition. ¹⁰ ērumpunt: compare with irrupō. ¹¹ persequī: observe the composition. ¹² fidūciā: synonym of fidēs. ¹³ contentiōnem: English derivative? ¹⁴ remiserant: had given up. ¹⁵ admonitī: composition? ¹⁶ infectā: composition?

Observe the position of the adverbs in the passage, and determine the reason for the exceptions to the rule stated above.

EXERCISE I.

Grammar: A. 382. 1; 414; 489; 496. B. 191. 1; 223; 336. 1; 337. 2, a, f. G. 356; 403; 282; 665; 666. H. 433; 479. 3; 460; 638. 1.

Inflection: trādō; auxiliū; gravis; ipse.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity usually precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

dēfessī	ēruptiōnibus	familiāribus	portum
bis	victūs	cōnsclenderat	ancorīs
crēbrīs	dēdere	nactus	cōspectū

THE MASSILIANS, BESET BY MISFORTUNE. SURRENDER

Massiliēnsēs omnibus dēfessī malis, rei frūmentāriae ad summam inopiam adductī, bis nāvāli¹ proeliō superātī, crēbris ēruptionibus fūsi, gravī etiam pestilentīā² cōnfectātī ex diūtīnā³ conclūsiōne et mūtātiōne victūs (pānicō enim vetere atque hordeō corruptō omnēs alēbantur, quod ad huius modi cāsūs⁴ antiquitus⁵ parātum in pūblicum⁶ contulerant), dēiectā turri, labefactā magnā parte mūrī, auxiliis prōvinciārum et exercituum dēspērātīs,⁷ quōs in Caesaris potestātem vēnisse cognōverant, sēsē dēdere sine fraude cōstituunt. Sed paucīs ante⁸ diēbus Lūcius Domitius cognitā Massiliēnsium voluntāte, nāvibus tribus comparātīs, ex quibus duās familiāribus suis attribuerat, ūnam ipse cōnscenderat, nactus turbidam tempestātem profectus est. Hunc cōnspiciāte nāvēs, quae missū⁹ Brūtī cōnsuetūdine cotidiānā ad¹⁰ portum excubābant, sublātīs ancorīs, sequī coepērunt. Ex his ūnum ipsius nāvīgium¹¹ contendit et fugere persevērāvīt¹² auxiliōque tempestātīs ex cōspectū abiit,¹³ duo perterrita¹⁴ concursū nostrārum nāvium sēsē in portum recēpērunt. Massiliēnsēs arma tormentaue ex oppidō, ut est imperātum, prōferunt, nāvis ex portū nāvālibusque ēdūcunt, pecūniam ex pūblicō trādunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs, Caesar, magis eōs prō nōmine et vetustāte¹⁵ quam prō meritīs in sē civitātis cōnservāns, duās ibi legiōnēs praesidiō¹⁶ reliquit. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 22

VOCABULARY

malum, ī, n., *evil*
 fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, *rout*
 cōnfectātus, a, um, *tormented*
 conclūsiō, ōnis, f., *blockade*
 mūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change*
 pānicum, ī, n., *millet*
 hordeum, ī, n., *barley*
 corruptus, a, um, *damaged*
 alō, 3, uī, tus, *fed*
 labefactus, a, um, *shaken*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deception*
 attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*
 turbidus, a, um, *boisterous*
 tempestās, ātis, f., *weather*
 excubō, 1, *keep watch*
 tormentum, ī, n., *hurling machine*
 nāvālia, ium, n., *dockyard*
 pecūnia, ae, f., *money*
 cōnservō, 1, *save*

NOTES

¹ *nāvāli*: *nāvis* + *ālis*, *belonging to*. ² *pestilentia*: English derivative?
³ *diūtina*: *diū* + *tinus*, a time suffix. ⁴ *cāsūs*: *chances*. ⁵ *antiquitus*:
adverb from *antiquus*, synonym of *vetus*. ⁶ *in pūblicum*: *for public use*.
⁷ *dēspērātis*: *dē* + *spērō*. English derivative? ⁸ *ante*: adverb. ⁹ *missū*:
verbal noun from *mittō*. ¹⁰ *ad*: *near*. ¹¹ *nāvigium*: synonym of *nāvis*.
¹² *persevērāvit*: English derivative? ¹³ *abiit*: composition? ¹⁴ *perter-
rita*: *nāvigia* is understood. ¹⁵ *vetustāte*: *vetus* + *tās*. ¹⁶ *praesidiō*:
states what the *legiōnēs* were for.

Determine which of the participles in the passage denote *time* and which denote *cause*.

EXERCISE LI

Grammar: A. 504, *b*; 540; 549. B. 338, 1, *c*; 286, 1, 2. G. 428, 2; 540; 586. H. 475, 2; 588, 1; 598.

Inflection: *volō*; *equitātus*; *ipse*.

Order of words: an adjective usually is placed immediately before or after the word which it modifies, unless a limiting word or phrase intervenes.

GALBA IS STATIONED IN THE ALPS TO KEEP THE
ROADS OPEN

Cū in Ītaliā proficiscerēt Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātis,¹ Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod² iter³ per Alpīs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuērānt, patefierī volēbat. Huic⁴ permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in his locīs legiōnem hiemandi causā collocāret. Galba secundis aliquot⁵ proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortis duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et⁶ ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus

in **valle**, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partīs flūmine dīviderētur,⁷ alteram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuam⁸ ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, I

VOCABULARY

duodecimus, a, um, <i>twelfth</i>	adiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus, <i>lie near to</i>
quō, <i>whither</i>	plānitīēs, ēī, f., <i>plain</i>
portōria, ōrum, n., <i>customs duties</i>	vacuus, a, um, <i>empty (vacuum)</i>
patefaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, <i>throw open</i>	attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, <i>assign</i>
arbitror, 1, <i>think</i>	

NOTES

- ¹ Nantuātis, etc.: for the location of these tribes, consult the map.
² quod, etc.: this clause explains *causa*. ³ iter: the voice of *pateferi* shows that *iter* must be subject. ⁴ huic: refers to Galba. ⁵ aliquot: indeclinable. ⁶ collocāre et: what word does *et* connect with *collocāre*?
⁷ cum . . . dīviderētur: states the reason for *concessit* and *attribuit*.
⁸ vacuam: predicate adjective with *relictam*.

Observe the position of the adjectives in the passage with reference to the words which they modify.

EXERCISE LII

Grammar: A. 569, 2; 579; 580. B. 297, 2; 313; 314, 1. G. 553, 3; 648; 650. H. 571, 1; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: eō; diēs; omnis.

Order of words: a preposition regularly precedes the word which it governs.

THE MOUNTAIN TRIBES RENEW THE WAR AND
OVERPOWER THE ROMAN SOLDIERS

Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque¹ eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat omnis noctū² discessisse,

montisque³ qui impendērent ā maximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri. Id **aliquot** dē causis acciderat, ut subitō Galli bellī **renovandī** legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum, quod⁴ legiōnem, neque eam⁵ plēnissimam dētrāctis cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm quī commeātūs petendī causā missi erant absentibus, propter paucitātem⁶ dēspiciēbant; tum etiā, quod propter inīquitātem⁷ loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in **vallem** dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinēri⁸ existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine⁹ dolēbant,¹⁰ et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiā perpetuae possessiōnis¹¹ culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae¹² adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.¹³ — DE BELLO GALlico, III, 2

VOCABULARY

eō, *thither*impendēō, 2, —, —, *overhang*plēnus, a, um, *full*singillātīm, *one at a time*abstrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, *draw**away from*culmen, inis, n., *summit*

NOTES

¹ frūmentum: the voice of **comportāri** shows that this cannot be its object.

² noctū: = nocte.

³ montis: for the syntax, observe the voice of **tenēri**.

⁴ quod, etc.: a clause which explains **causis**. How many other reasons does Cæsar give?

⁵ eam: refers to **legiōnem**.

⁶ paucitātem: pauci + tās.

⁷ inīquitātem: in + aequus + tās.

⁸ sustinēri: complementary infinitive.

⁹ nōmine: *under the name*.

¹⁰ dolēbant: an indirect statement depends on it.

¹¹ possessiōnis: understand **causā**.

¹² prōvinciae: for the case, consider **adiungere**.

¹³ sibi persuāsum habēbant: *were persuaded*.

Think of English words from **factus**, **concesserat**, **impendērent**, **acciderat**, **renovandī**, **dēspiciēbant**, **culmina**, **adiungere**, and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE LIII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 409. *a*: 420. 1, 2; 454. B. 201. 2; 218, 8; 227, 2, *a. d*: 330. G. 369; 405; 410; 422. 4. H. 442; 477, 11; 489, 1; 615, 1.

Inflection: possum; salūs; celeriter (compare).

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic. normally follows the noun which it limits.

A COUNCIL IS CALLED TO CONSIDER WAYS OF MEETING
THE IMPENDING DANGER

His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsq̄ue plēnē esset perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum,¹ quod² dēditōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum³ existimāverat, cōsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere⁴ coepit. Quō in cōsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta⁵ cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō veniri⁶ neque commeātūs supportari⁷ interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā⁸ salūte nōn nullae eius modi⁹ sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentīs relictīs, ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent.¹⁰ Maiōri tamen parti¹¹ placuit¹² hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōsiliō interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 3

VOCABULARY

plēnē, *fully*
eō, *thither*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*

NOTES

- ¹ *esset prōvisum:* impersonal. ² *quod:* conjunction. ³ *timendum:* what is understood? Consider the finite verb of the clause. ⁴ *exquirere:* ex + quaerō. ⁵ *complēta:* predicate adjective. ⁶ *veniri:* understand

posset, used impersonally. ⁷ supportāri: sub, *ut* to, + portō. ⁸ dēspērātā: composition? ⁹ modī: descriptive genitive. ¹⁰ contenderent: states the purpose of sententiae dīcēbantur. ¹¹ parti: for the case, consider the verb. ¹² placuit: impersonal.

Find the phrases in the passage which contain a genitive, observe in each case the position of the genitive, and determine the reason for the position.

EXERCISE LIV

Grammar: A. 400; 401; 418; 463. B. 214, 1, *b*; 226; 335. G. 405; 397; 647. H. 462; 480; 610.

Inflection: dō: brevis; suī.

Order of words: an adverb normally is placed before the word which it limits.

OUR MEN, ATTACKED BY THE ENEMY, ARE AT
A DISADVANTAGE BECAUSE OF THEIR SMALL
NUMBERS

Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut iis rēbus¹ quās cōstituissent collocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere,² lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integris viribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum **frūstrā** tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus³ premi vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxiliū ferre: sed hōc⁴ superārī, quod⁵ diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessi proeliō excēdēbant, alii integris viribus succēdēbant,—quārum rērum ā nostris propter paucitātem⁶ fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō⁷ ex pugnā excēdendī sed nē **sauciō** quidem eius loci ubi cōstiterat relinquendī ac suī⁸ recipiendī facultās dabātur.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 4

VOCABULARY

intericiō, 3. iēcī, iectus, *intervene*
gaesum, ī, n., *javelin*
integer, gra, grum, *fresh*

dēfēnsor, ōris, m., *defender*
diūturnitās, ātis, f., *long duration*

NOTES

¹ *rēbus*: for the case, consider the verb of the clause. ² *dēcurrere*: historical infinitive, used in lively narrative instead of the indicative. The passage contains several other examples of this use of the infinitive. ³ *dēfēnsōribus*: with *nūdāta*. ⁴ *hōc*: ablative of respect. ⁵ *quod*: conjunction. ⁶ *paucitātem*: *pauci* + *tās*. ⁷ *dēfessō*: understand *hominī*. Take with *dabātur*. ⁸ *sui*: refers to *sauciō*.

Think of English words from *brevī*, *tempus*, *omnibus*, *integrīs*, *frūstrā*, *superiōre*, *succēdēbant*, *poterat*, and observe how the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English derivative.

EXERCISE LV

Grammar: A. 282; 345; 563. B. 169, 1; 203, 1; 295, 1. G. 320; 365; 546. H. 393; 440, 3; 565.

Inflection: *faciō*; *vīs*; *certior*.

Order of words: a common arrangement of the parts of the predicate, unless modified by the general rule of emphasis, is: indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

THE ROMANS DECIDE THAT IN A SALLY LIES THEIR
ONLY HOPE OF RELIEF

Cum iam amplius hōris¹ sex continenter pugnārētur² ac nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque³ nostris vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta⁴ cāsum, Pūblius Sextius Baculus, prīmī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum⁵ vulneribus diximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit⁶ paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre **reficerent**, post⁷ datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 5

VOCABULARY

languidus, a, um, <i>tweary</i>	accurrō, 3, currī, cursum, <i>run to</i>
scindō, 3, scidī, scissus, <i>split</i>	ērumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, <i>burst forth (eruption)</i>

NOTES

¹ hōris: ablative with *amplius*. ² pugnārētur, etc.: these verbs are in the subjunctive because the clauses describe the circumstances that go to make up the critical condition in which Galba finds himself. ³ languidiōribus: a part of the ablative absolute. ⁴ perducta: with *esset*. ⁵ cōnfectum: what is understood? ⁶ certiōrēs facit: equivalent to a verb of commanding, the commands being expressed in the following subjunctives. ⁷ post: adverb.

Select words in the passage which seem emphatic, and determine the reason for considering them so.

EXERCISE LVI

Grammar: A. 370; 419; 423, 1; 540. B. 187, III; 227; 230; 286, 1. G. 347; 409; 393; 540. H. 429; 489; 486; 588, 1.

Inflection: fiō; alius.

Order of words: a demonstrative pronoun usually precedes the word which it modifies.

THE ROMANS BY A SALLY ROUT THE ENEMY AND
RETURN TO THE PROVINCE

Quod¹ iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque sui² colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs³ interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius trīgintā, quem numerum⁴ barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superioribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque⁵ exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod⁶ saepius fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō⁷

sē in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā⁸ permōtus posterō diē omnibus eius vīcī⁹ aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam reverti contendit, ac nullō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante¹⁰ incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātis, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 6

VOCABULARY

colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>gather together</i>	fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, <i>roul</i>
(collection)	exuō, 3, uī, ūtus, <i>strip</i>
commūtō, 1, <i>change</i> (commute)	meminī, isse (defective), <i>remember</i>

NOTES

¹ quod: pronoun; understand *facere*. ² suī: refers to *hostibus*.
³ circumventōs: translate as if it were a finite verb with the same form as *interficiunt*. ⁴ numerum: subject of *vēnisse*. ⁵ armīs: ablative of separation.
⁶ quod: conjunction. ⁷ aliō: note the emphasis. ⁸ inopiā: states the cause of *permōtus*. ⁹ vīcī: a genitive often stands between an adjective and its noun. ¹⁰ dēmorante: synonym of *moror*.

EXERCISE LVII

Grammar: A. 345, *a*; 419, *a*; 423, 1, 2. B. 203, 1; 227, 1; 230; 181, 1. G. 365; 409; 393; 336. H. 440, 3; 489; 486; 417.

Inflection: *coepī*; *opus*; *exterus* (*compare*).

Order of words: the limiting word or phrase, unless unemphatic, precedes the word which it limits.

The Veneti, a tribe occupying the seacoast northwest of the River Loire, form a union to resist the Romans. They have a strong navy and live in a section hard to invade. Cæsar understands the seriousness of the danger and orders a large fleet of war vessels to be built and equipped.

THE LOCATION OF THE TOWNS OF THE VENETI AND THEIR MEANS OF DEFENSE

Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita¹ in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque² neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō³ sē *acustus* incitāvisset, quod⁴ accidit semper hōrārū duodecim

spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadis afflictārentur.⁵ Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur. Ac sī quandō magnitudīne operis forte superātī, extrūsō **marī** aggere ac **mōlibus** atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre⁶ fortūnis suis coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium **appulsō**, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant⁷ omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō⁸ facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs **tempestātibus** dētīnēbantur,⁹ summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, **rārīs** ac prope nūllis **portibus**, difficultās nāvīgandī. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 12

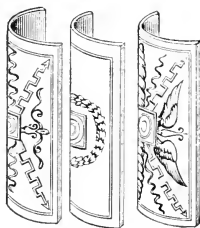
VOCABULARY

situs, ūs, m., *situation*quandō, *at any time*lingula, ae, f., *little tongue* (of land)extrūdō, 3. trūsī, trūsus, *shut out*semper, *always*vāstus, a, um, *vast*

NOTES

¹ **posita**: agrees with a pronoun referring to **oppidōrum** and subject of **habērent**. ² **prōmunturiīs**: English derivative? ³ **altō**: *the deep*. ⁴ **quod**: refers to the fact stated in the preceding clause. ⁵ **afflictārentur**: English derivative? ⁶ **dēspērāre**: composition? ⁷ **dēportābant**: composition? ⁸ **eō**: *for this reason*. ⁹ **dētīnēbantur**: composition?

Observe the large number of examples of the ablative absolute in the passage and determine the best way to translate each one.



SHIELDS

EXERCISE LVIII

Grammar: A. 414; 415; 506. B. 223; 224; 338, 3. G. 403; 400; 432, R. H. 479; 473, 2; 628.

Inflection: fiō; flūctus; plānior.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

THE SHIPS OF THE VENETI AND THEIR EQUIPMENT

Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum¹ factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium,² quō³ facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae⁴ admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad magnitudinem flūctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus⁵ in altitudinem trabibus, cōnfixa clāvis ferreīs digitī pollicis⁶ crassitudīne; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnis revinctae⁷; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae,⁸ sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam⁹ sive eō, quod est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.¹⁰ — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 13

VOCABULARY

carīna, ae, f., keel	cōnfixus, a, um, fastened together
aliquantus, a, um, some, somewhat	clāvus, ī, m., nail
dēcessus, ūs, m., ebb	crassitudō, inis, f., thickness
prōra, ae, f., prow	alūta, ae, f., leather
admodum, very much	tenuiter, thinly
ērēctus, a, um, raised	sive . . . sive, whether . . . or
trānstrum, ī, n., thwart	linum, ī, n., linen

NOTES

¹ modum: fashion. ² nāvium: understand carīnae. ³ quō: introduces a clause of purpose containing a comparative. ⁴ prōrae: understand erant. ⁵ pedālibus: pēs + ālis, belonging to, of a. ⁶ digitī pollicis:

thumb. ⁷ *revinctae*: *re* + *vinciō*. ⁸ *cōnfectae*: *tanned*. ⁹ *īnscientiam*: composition? ¹⁰ *arbitrābantur*: synonym of *existimō*.

Think of English words from *factae*, *plāniōrēs*, *excipere*, *flūctuum*, *tōtae*, *cōnfectae*, *onera*, and observe how the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English derivative.

EXERCISE LIX

Grammar: A. 374, *a*; 537, 1; 569, 2. B. 189, 1; 284, 1; 297, 2. G. 355; 552; 553, 4. H. 431; 570; 571, 1.

Inflection: *ferō*; *vīs*; *facile* (*compare*).

Order of words: the words of a phrase, clause, or sentence are arranged from the beginning in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

WHY THE ROMAN SHIPS ARE INFERIOR TO THOSE OF THE VENETI

Cum *hīs*¹ *nāvibus* nostrae *classī*² eius modi congressus³ erat ut *ūnā* celeritāte et *pulsū*⁴ *rēmōrum* praestāret, reliqua *prō* loci *nātūrā*, *prō* *vī* *tempestātum*, *illis*⁵ essent *aptiōra* et *accommodātiōra*. Neque enim *iis*⁶ nostrae *rōstrō* *nocēre* poterant, tanta in *iis* erat *firmitūdō*,⁷ neque propter altitudinem facile *tēlum* *adigēbātur*,⁸ et eādem *dē* causā minus *commodē* *cōpulis* *continēbantur*. *Accēdēbat*⁹ ut, cum *saevire* *ventus* *coepisset* et *sē* *ventō* *dedissent*, et *tempestātem* *ferrent* *facilius* et in *vadis* *cōnsisterent* *tūtius* et ab *aestū* *relictae* *nihil* *saxa* et *cautīs* *timērent*; quārum *rērum* *omnium* *nostris* *nāvibus* *cāsus* *erat* *extimēscendus*.¹⁰ — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 13

VOCABULARY

cōpula, *ae*, *f.*, *grappling hook*

tūtē, *safely*

NOTES

¹ *hīs*: i. e. of the Veneti. ² *classī*: shows the possessor. ³ *congressus*: noun from *congregior*. ⁴ *pulsū*: noun from *pellō*. ⁵ *illis*: i. e. *hīs* *nāvibus*. ⁶ *iis*: with *nocēre*. ⁷ *firmitūdō*: *firmus* + *tūdō*.

⁸ *adigēbātur*: was hurled to (them). ⁹ *accēdēbat*: another fact was.
¹⁰ *extimēscendus*: synonym of *timeō*.

Observe the phrases in the passage, noting how their position in the sentence expresses their relative importance in the mind of Cæsar.

EXERCISE LX

Grammar: A. 372; 573; 574. B. 256. 3; 300, 1. G. 208, 2; 452, 2; 467. H. 302. 6; 649, II.

Inflection: *sūmō*; *turris*.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

CÆSAR SENDS FOR THE ROMAN SHIPS AND THE TWO
FLEETS ENGAGE IN BATTLE

Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Cæsar, ubi intellēxit **frūstrā** tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi¹ neque iis² nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam **classem**. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae et trīgintā nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ōrnatissimae profectae ex **portū** nostris adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classi praeerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, **cōnstābat**³ quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. **Rōstrō** enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis, tamen hās altitūdō **puppium** ex barbaris nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa⁴ ā Gallis gravius acciderent.⁵

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 14

VOCABULARY

ōrnō, 1, *equip*

excitō, 1, *build up*

attribuō, 3, *uī, ūtus, assign*

NOTES

¹ *reprimi*: re + *premō*. ² *iis*: dative with *nocērī* used impersonally.

³ *cōnstābat*: impersonal. ⁴ *missa*: understand *ea* referring to *tēla*.

⁵ *acciderent*: *fell*.

EXERCISE LXI

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 542; 549. B. 191, 1; 288, 3; 286, 2. G. 356; 584; 586. H. 433, 3; 601, 4; 598.

Inflection: gerō; magis (compare).

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is a place of emphasis.

HOW THE ROMANS HAVE THE ADVANTAGE IN THE FIGHT

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta¹ ā nostris, falcēs praecūtāe² affīxaeque³ longuriis, nōn absimili⁴ fōrmā⁵ mūrālium⁶ falcium. His cum **fūnēs** quī antemnas ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehendēsi adductique erant, nāvigiō **rēmīs** incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis⁷ nāvibus spēs in **vēlīs** armāmentisque cōsisteret, his ēreptis omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat **certāmen** positum⁸ in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum⁹ latēre posset¹⁰; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus¹¹ in **mare** ab exercitū tenēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 14

VOCABULARY

falx, falcis, f., *hook*

praecūtus, a, um, *sharpened to a point*

longurius, longu'ri, m., *long pole*

antenna, ae, f., *sail-yard*

mālus, ī, m., *mast*

dēstinō, ī, *bind fast to*

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, *seize*

nāvigiūm, nāvi'gī, n., *boat*

praerumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break off*

abscidō, 3, cidī, cīsus, *cut away*

concidō, 3, cidī, —, *fall*

armāmentum, ī, n., *tackle*

ēripiō, 3, uī, reptus, *tear away*

NOTES

¹ praeparāta: composition?

² insertae: participle. English derivative?

³ affīxae: participle. English derivative? ⁴ absimili: composition?

The prefix has the force of a negative. ⁵ fōrmā: describes **falcēs**.

⁶ *mūrālium*: *mūrus* + *ālis*, *belonging to*. ⁷ *Galicis*: *Gallia* + *icus*, English "-ic." ⁸ *erat positum*: *depended*. ⁹ *factum*: participle of *faciō*, used as a noun. ¹⁰ *posset*: shows a result of *quod . . . gerēbātur*. ¹¹ *dēspectus*: cf. *cōspectū* above.

Many English words are derived from words in the passage. Make a list, and observe the relation in meaning between the Latin and the English word.

EXERCISE LXII

Grammar: A. 542: 549. B. 228, 3: 286, 2; 309, 3. G. 584; 586; 587. H. 601, 4: 598.

Inflection: *reperiō*; *binī*.

Order of words: numeral adjectives and adjectives of quantity usually precede the word which they limit.

A CALM PREVENTS THE FLIGHT OF THE ENEMY AND
THE ROMANS ARE VICTORIOUS

Dēiectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulās *bīnae* ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, milites summā vī transcendere in hostium nāvis contendebant. Quod¹ postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nullum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salutem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō *ventus* ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās² exstitit ut sē ex locō mōvēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostri *cōnsectātī* expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae³ ex omni numerō noctis interventū⁴ ad terram pervenirent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsū pugnārētur.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 15

VOCABULARY

antenna, ae, f., *sail-yard*
trāscendō, 3, *scendī*, *scēnsus*,
climb over

malacia, ae, f., *calm*
existō, 3, *stitī*, —, *arise*
ūsque, *even*

NOTES

¹ *quod*: a relative. ² *tranquillitās*: English derivative? ³ *perpaucae*: the prefix is intensive. ⁴ *interventū*: *inter* + *veniō*.

By this battle the war with the Veneti is ended. Cæsar punishes the survivors severely that in the future the rights of ambassadors may be upheld.

EXERCISE LXIII

Grammar: A. 374, *a*; 500, 2; 504. B. 189, 1; 337, 8, *b*, 1; 338, 1, *a*. G. 355; 251, 1; 428. H. 431; 621; 626.

Inflection: *nōlō*; *vōx*; *duo*.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

SABINUS AMONG THE VENELLI. HE REFUSES TO FIGHT

Dum haec in Venetis¹ geruntur,² Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finis Venellōrum pervēnit. His³ praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcerant,⁴ ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucis diēbus Aulercī Eburovicēs Lexoviique, senātū suō interfectō quod auctōrēs⁵ belli esse nōlēbant,⁶ portās⁷ clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs⁸ spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī culturā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.⁹ Sabīnus idōneō¹⁰ omnibus rēbus¹¹ locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem¹² Sabīnus veniret sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil¹³ carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praeibuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod¹⁴ cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum¹⁵ nōn existimābat. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 17

VOCABULARY

claudō, 3. sī, sus, *close*
 perditus, a, um, *desperate*
 latrō, ōnis, m., *robber*

cultūra, ae, f., *cultivation*
 sēvocō, 1. *call away*
 carpō, 3. carpsī, carptus, *criticize*

NOTES

¹ Venetīs: a seacoast tribe in Gaul. ² geruntur: dum meaning *while* is followed by the present tense. ³ hīs: for the case, consider *praeerat*. ⁴ dēfēcerant: *had revolted*. ⁵ auctōrēs: augeō + tor. English "author." ⁶ nōlēbant: states Cæsar's reason for *interfectō*, hence indicative. ⁷ portās: English derivative? ⁸ quōs: understand *ī* as antecedent. ⁹ sēvocābat: sē + vocō. Vocō = *appellō*. ¹⁰ idōneō: *fit*. ¹¹ rēbus: limits *idōneō*, answering the question "in what respect." ¹² contemptiōnem: English derivative? ¹³ nōn nihil: *somewhat*. ¹⁴ quod: causal. ¹⁵ dīmicandum: synonym of *pugnō*.

EXERCISE LXIV

Grammar: A. 367: 531, 2: 573: 574. B. 187, II, a: 282, 2: 300, 1. G. 346: 630; 452, 2: 467. H. 426, 1; 590: 649, II.

Inflection: volō; homō; libenter (compare).

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

THE TRICK OF SABINUS TO GET THE ENEMY TO
ATTACK THE CAMP

Hāc¹ cōfirmātā opiniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et **callidum** dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxili causā² sēcūm³ habēbat. Huic⁴ magnīs praemiis pollicitatiōnibusque⁵ persuādet utī ad hostis trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet.⁶ Quī ubi prō⁷ perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur⁸ docet, neque longius abesse⁹ quīn proximā nocte Sabinus **clam** ex castris exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod¹⁰ ubi auditum est, conclāmant¹¹ omnēs **occāsiōnem** negōti¹² bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra irī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium

Gallōs hortābantur, —superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō,¹³ inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei **parum** diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod¹⁴ ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius¹⁵ Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimitunt quam ab iis sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā, laeti¹⁶ ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra **pergunt**.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 18

VOCABULARY

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter*
cunctātiō, ōnis, f., *hesitation*
cibāria, ōrum, n., *provisions*
libenter, *willingly*
crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe*

laetus, a, um, *glad*
sarmentum, ī, n., *brushwood*
virgultum, ī, n., *bush*
colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *gather*

NOTES

¹ **hāc**: referring to the account in the preceding chapter. ² **causā**: for the sake of. ³ **sēcum**: i.e. Sabinus. ⁴ **huic**: for the case, consider **persuādet**. ⁵ **pollicitātiōnibus**: **pollicitor** + **tiō**. **Pollicitor** = **polliceor**. ⁶ **ēdocet**: synonym of **doceō**. ⁷ **prō**: in the guise of. ⁸ **premātur**: is harassed. ⁹ **abesse**: depends on **docet**. ¹⁰ **quod**: the antecedent is the statement of the Gaul. ¹¹ **conclāmant**: compare English "exclamation." ¹² **negōtī**: synonym of **rēs**. ¹³ **cōfirmātiō**: **cōfirmō** + **tiō**. This and the other nouns in the same case are appositives of **rēs**. ¹⁴ **quod**: conjunction. ¹⁵ **prius**: take with **quam** below. ¹⁶ **laetī**: translate as if an adverb.

Think of English words from **dēlēgit**, **prōpōnit**, **proximā**, **hortābantur**, **superiōrum**, **prōvisum**, **crēdunt**, **compleant**, and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

EXERCISE LXV

Grammar: A. 506; 568. B. 338, 3; 339, 2; 297, 1. G. 432, R.; 553, 3. H. 628; 571, 1.

Inflection: **fiō**; **certior**; **noster**.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word is usually placed first.

SABINUS ATTACKS THE ENEMY WHILE THEY ARE AT
A DISADVANTAGE AND DEFEATS THEM

Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū¹ contendērunt, ut quam minimum² spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique³ pervēnērunt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus⁴ signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fieri iubet. Factum est⁵ opportunitāte locī, hostium īnscentiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiorum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent.⁶ Quōs integrīs viribus milītēs nostrī cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs⁷ cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī⁸ pugnā Sabinus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar est certior factus,⁹ civitātēque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt.¹⁰ Nam ut¹¹ ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum **alacer** ac prōptus est animus, sic **mollis** ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns¹² eōrum est. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 19

VOCABULARY

acclivis, e, *sloping up*colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *collect*īnscentia, ae, f., *ignorance*dēfatigātiō, ōnis, f., *exhaustion*integer, gra, grum, *fresh*

NOTES

¹ **cursū**: answers the question "how" about **contendērunt**. ² **quam minimum**: *the least possible*. ³ **exanimātī**: *out of breath*. ⁴ **cupientibus**: used substantively; translate by a demonstrative pronoun and a relative clause. ⁵ **factum est**: *it happened*. ⁶ **verterent**: think of the compounds **āvertō** and **convertō**. ⁷ **equitēs**: nominative. ⁸ **nāvālī**: *nāvis + ālis, pertaining to*. ⁹ **est factus**: has two subjects. ¹⁰ **dēdidērunt**: from the same stem is derived the noun **dēditō**. ¹¹ **ut**: for the meaning, consider the mode of **est**. ¹² **mēns**: synonym of **animus**.

The tribes of Aquitania, in southwestern Gaul, revolt against Crassus, sent among them by Cæsar, and choose as leaders men who have had experience in Spain and know the Roman methods of warfare. After vigorous fighting the enemy's camp is taken and the revolt crushed.

EXERCISE LXVI

Grammar: A. 496: 540. 1. B. 337, 2, *a, f*; 286, 1. G. 664; 665; 666: 540. H. 638. 1: 588, 1.

Inflection: cōficiō; opus.

Order of words: the preposition regularly precedes the word which it governs.

THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII FROM THEIR FORESTS
AND SWAMPS ANNOY THE ROMANS

Eōdem ferē tempore¹ Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiique supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce misissent, arbitrātus² id bellum celeriter cōfici posse eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē³ aliā ratiōne ac⁴ reliquī Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentisque⁵ silvās ac palūdēs habebant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae evolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et, complūribus interfectis, longius impeditiōribus locis secūti paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 28

VOCABULARY

exigō, 3. ēgī, āctus, *finish*

umquam, *ever*

evolō, 1. *fly out*

dēperdō, 3. didī, ditus, *lose*

NOTES

¹ tempore: i. e. that of the events referred to in the last note of Exercise LXV. ² arbitrātus: synonym of existimō. ³ longē: with aliā.
⁴ ac: *than*. ⁵ continentis: *unbroken*.

Select several short phrases from the passage and determine the emphatic word in each phrase.

EXERCISE LXVII

Grammar: A. 345, *a*: 412; 546. B. 203; 220, 1; 288, 1. B. G. 365; 399; 585. H. 440, 3; 473, 3; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: diēs; uterque; quis.

Order of words: the words in a phrase, clause, or sentence are arranged in the order of the development of the thought in the writer's mind.

CÆSAR, HAVING CUT DOWN THE FORESTS, IS DEFEATED
BY CONTINUAL RAINSTORMS

Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** instituit, et, nē quis¹ inermibus imprudentibusque militibus² ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam **māteriam** quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latas exstruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte³ magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma⁴ impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt **tempestātēs** cōsecūtae uti opus necessariō intermitterētur et continuātiōne⁵ imbriū diūtius sub pellibus⁶ militēs continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicis aedificiisque incēnsis, Caesar exercitum⁷ redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviusque, reliquīs item civitatibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernis collocāvit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 29

VOCABULARY

deinceps, *in succession*

imber, bris, m., *rainstorm*

imprūdēns, imprudentis, *off one's guard*

NOTES

¹ quis: with impetus. ² militibus: dative. ³ celeritāte: answers the question "how" about cōfectō. ⁴ extrēma: *the rear of*. ⁵ continuātiōne: states a reason for continēri nōn possent. ⁶ pellibus: the material used as a covering for the tents. ⁷ exercitum: with collocāvit as well as with redūxit.

EXERCISE LXVIII

Grammar: A. 406; 415; 504. B. 217, 1; 224, 1; 338, 1, *a.* G. 398; 400; 428. H. 471; 473, 2; 626.

Inflection: maneō; domus; ille.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word is likely to be placed first.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE SUEBI, WHO HAVE FORCED
SOME OF THE OTHER GERMAN TRIBES TO CROSS
THE RHINE

Eā quae secūta est **hieme**, quī fuit annus Gnaeō Pompēiō, Mārcō Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germāni et item Tencterī magnā cum multitudīne hominū flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt nōn longē ā **marī**, quō Rhēnus influit.¹ Causa trānseundi fuit quod² ab Suēbīs complūris annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā³ prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī⁴ rūsus invicem annō⁵ post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agrī culturā nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī⁶ agrī⁷ apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem **lacte** atque **pecore** vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et **cibī** genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitae, quod ā pueris nullō officiō aut disciplinā⁸ assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virīs⁹ alit et immānī corporum magnitudīne hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdīnem addūxērunt ut locis¹⁰ frīgīdissimīs¹¹ neque vestītūs praeter pellis habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

VOCABULARY

exagitō, 1, <i>harass</i>	vēnātiō, ōnis, f., <i>hunting</i>
gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>	vīta, ae, f., <i>life</i> (vitality)
bellicōsus, a, um, <i>warlike</i>	assuēfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, <i>train</i>
quotannīs, <i>every year</i>	immānis, e, <i>huge</i>
alō, 3, uī, tus, <i>support</i>	vestītus, ūs, m., <i>clothing</i>
invicem, <i>in turn</i>	exiguitās, ātis, f., <i>scantiness</i>
colō, 3, uī, cultus, <i>till, cultivate</i>	apertus, a, um, <i>uncovered</i>
vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, <i>live</i>	lavō, 1, lāvī, lautus, <i>bathe</i> (lav-

NOTES

¹ *in*fluit: composition? ² *quod*: conjunction. ³ *cultūrā*: English derivative? ⁴ *hī*: i.e. *reliqui*. ⁵ *annō*: expresses degree of difference with *post*. ⁶ *sēparātī*: English derivative? ⁷ *agrī*: take with *nihil*. ⁸ *disciplinā*: English derivative? ⁹ *vīrīs*: from *vīs*. ¹⁰ *locīs*: ablative absolute expressing concession. ¹¹ *frīgidissimīs*: English derivative?

EXERCISE LXIX

Grammar: A. 345; 373; 410; 416. B. 203, 5; 190; 218, 1; 225. G. 365; 366; 349; 407; 404. H. 440, 3; 447; 430; 477, I; 478, 1.
Inflection: *dēsiliō*; *vēstīgium*.

Order of words: the limiting word is likely to precede the word which it limits.

THE SCORN OF THE SUEBI FOR THE CUSTOMS AND PRODUCTS OF FOREIGNERS

Mercātōribus¹ est aditus magis eō, ut quae² bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō³ ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent.⁴ Quin etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs⁵ nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātīōne summī ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur,⁶ equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgīō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celerīter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt;

neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur⁷ quam ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum⁸ equitum **quamvis** pauci adire audent. Vinum omninō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.⁹ — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 2

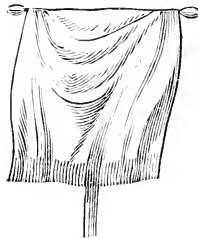
VOCABULARY

iūmentum, ī, n., <i>beast of burden</i>	iners, inertis, <i>unskillful</i>
dēlectō, 1, <i>delight</i>	ephippium, ephippī, n., <i>saddle cloth</i>
impēnsus, a, um, <i>excessive, high</i>	vīnum, ī, n., <i>wine</i>
dēfōrmis, e, <i>misshapen</i>	remollēscō, 3, —, —, <i>lose strength</i>
assuēfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, <i>train</i>	effēminō, 1, <i>make womanish</i>
turpis, e, <i>disgraceful</i>	

NOTES

¹ mercātōribus: dative showing the possessor. ² quae: understand ea, object of vēndant, as antecedent. ³ quō: because. ⁴ dēsīderent: synonym of cupiō. ⁵ importātis: with iūmentis. ⁶ proeliantur: from proelium. ⁷ habētur: is considered. ⁸ ephippiātōrum: ephippium + ātus, provided with. ⁹ arbitrantur: synonym of existimō.

The Usipetes and the Tencteri, German tribes, forced by the Suebi, cross the Rhine and invade the territory of the Menapii in the extreme northern part of Gaul. They conquer these and seize their towns and property.



VEXILLUM

EXERCISE LXX

Grammar: A. 343, *b*: 354, *b*: 573. B. 198, 3: 209, 1: 300, 1, N. G. 366; 377; 452, 2. H. 447: 457; 649, II.

Inflection: *paenitet*; *certior*.

Order of words: demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns usually precede the words which they modify.

CÆSAR FEARS THE FICKLENESS AND CREDULITY OF
THE GAULS

His dē rēbus¹ Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem² Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum³ existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis,⁴ utī et viātōrēs⁵ etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumsistat,⁶ quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint **prōnūntiāre** cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus⁷ permōti dē summīs saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in **vēstigiō paenitēre** necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant, et plēriq̄ue ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 5

VOCABULARY

mōbilis, e, *changeable*

serviō, 4, ivī, itum, *be a slave, serve*

necesse (indeclinable), *necessary*

NOTES

¹ his rēbus: i. e. the advance of the Usipetes and the Tencteri. ² infirmitātem: in + firmus + tās. ³ committendum: understand esse. ⁴ cōsuētūdinis: predicate genitive. ⁵ viātōrēs: via + tor. ⁶ circumsistat: for the mood, compare cōgant. ⁷ auditiōnibus: audiō + tiō; *reports*.

Cæsar demands that the Germans leave Gaul, but they say that they cannot endure the Suebi. He then proposes that they settle among the Ubii, just on the other side of the Rhine. The Germans ask that Cæsar remain where he is while this proposal is being considered, but Cæsar thinks this is a ruse to gain time.

EXERCISE LXXI

Grammar: A. 393. *a*: 406. B. 177. 1, 3; 217, 1. G. 340, *b*, R. 1; 398. H. 410, 1; 471.

Inflection: orior: avis.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

THE COURSE OF THE MEUSE AND THE RHINE

Mosa prōfluit¹ ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus,² **insulam** efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde³ milibus passuum octōgintā in Ōceanum influit.⁴ Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus⁵ fertur, et ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit⁶ in plūris diffluit⁷ partīs multis ingentibusque insulis effectīs, quārum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis **avium** vivere existimantur), multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 10

VOCABULARY

citātus, a, um, *swift*
ingēns, ingentis, *huge*
piscis, is, m., *fish*

ōvum, ī, n., *egg*
vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*

NOTES

- ¹ prōfluit: composition? ² Vacalus: predicate nominative. ³ inde: i. e. ab insulā. ⁴ influit: composition? ⁵ citātus: give it the force of an adverb. ⁶ appropinquāvit: the root is found in the adverb **prope**.
⁷ diffluit: composition?

EXERCISE LXXII

Grammar: A. 504, *a*; 506; 563. B. 338, 1, *a*, 5; 339, 2; 295, 1. G. 428; 432; 546. H. 626; 628; 565.

Inflection: revertor; iūs; ipse.

Order of words: commonly temporal clauses precede, and purpose clauses follow, the verb on which they depend.

THE GERMANS ASK CAESAR NOT TO ADVANCE AND NOT TO FIGHT FOR A FEW DAYS

Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim milibus abesset, ut¹ erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur² ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret cōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret³ in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum⁴ sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur⁵ sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi tridui spatium daret.⁶ Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur,⁷ ut tridui morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam⁸ frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis⁹ cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostis proeliō lacesserent, et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent **quoad** ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 11

VOCABULARY

antecēdō, 3, cessī, cessum, *go ahead*

aquātiō, ōnis, f., *getting water*

frequēns, frequentis, *in large*

numbers

NOTES

¹ *ut:* *as.* ² *prōgrederētur:* the root of this word is found in *gradus*, *step.*

³ *potestātem faceret:* *give an opportunity.* ⁴ *quōrum:* the antecedent is *Ubiōs*. Caesar's proposal was that the Germans should settle in this tribe's

territory. ⁵ *ferrētur*: *was proposed*. ⁶ *daret*: in the words of the Germans this was an imperative. ⁷ *arbitrābātur*: synonym of *existimō*.
⁸ *quam*: *possible*. ⁹ *postulātis*: participle of *postulō* used as a noun.

EXERCISE LXXIII

Grammar: A. 370: 382: 403, *a*. B. 187, III: 191, 1: 215. G. 347; 356: 395. H. 429; 433: 467: 469, 2.

Inflection: *cadō*; *frāter*; *timēns*.

Order of words: the possessive adjectives, unless emphatic, follow the noun which they modify.

IN A CAVALRY SKIRMISH WITH THE ENEMY THE
ROMANS LOSE SEVERAL MEN

At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt,¹ quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod ii quī frūmentandi causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō² ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab hīs petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus his resistentibus cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs **dēsiluērunt**, suffossisque equis complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius³ fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et **septuāgintā**, in hīs vir fortissimus Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere⁴ nātus, cuius avus in civitate suā rēgnum obtinuerat amicus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus **quoad** potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit⁵ atque interfectus est.

VOCABULARY

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred*
 frūmentor, 1, *forage*
 indūtiaē, ārum, f., *truce*
 suffodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, *stab from below*

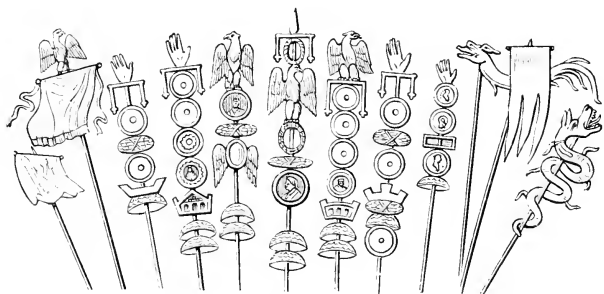
avus, ī, m., *grandfather*
 ēripiō, 3, uī, reptus, *rescue*
 procul, *from a distance*

NOTES

¹ cōspexērunt: compare with dēspiciō and cōspectus. ² paulō: synonym of parvō. ³ prius: take with quam following. ⁴ genere: *lineage*.
⁵ obtulit: ob + ferō. English derivative?

The passage contains many words from which English words are derived. Make a list.

Cæsar distrusts the Gauls, and when after the battle their representatives come to him to make excuses, he has them arrested, and at once sets out with the army for their camp. Before they know what is going on, he storms their camp and inflicts on them fearful punishment. Because of the trouble which the Germans keep causing him, Cæsar determines to cross the Rhine and attack them.



SIGNA MILITARIA

EXERCISE LXXIV

Grammar: A. 343, *b*; 374, *a*; 414. *a*. B. 198, 3; 189, 1; 223. G. 366; 355; 403. H. 447; 431; 479, 1.

Inflection: *dēfīgō*; *aqua*; *bīnī*.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word is commonly placed first.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE BRIDGE THAT CÆSAR BUILT
ACROSS THE RHINE

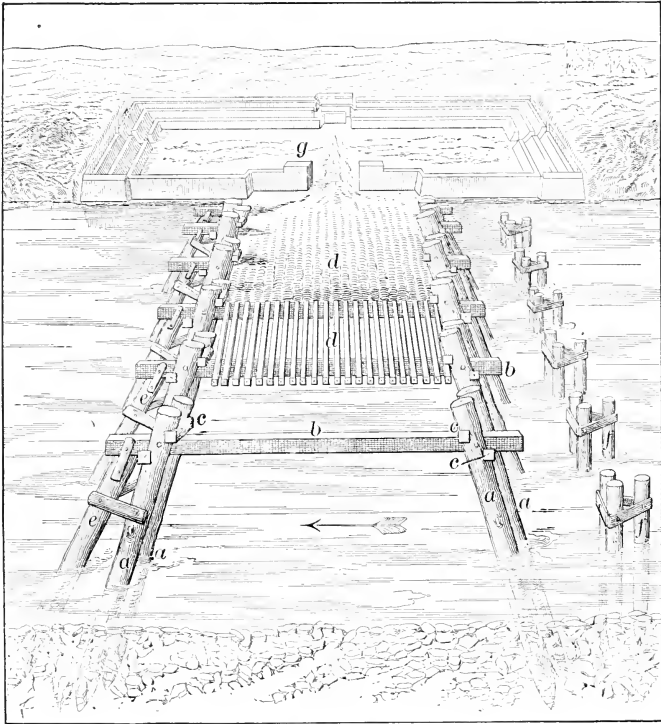
Caesar his *dē* causis quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre *dēcrēverat*; sed nāvibus trānsīre¹ neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis² esse³ statuēbat.



GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem,⁴ altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimāvit. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īstituit. Tigna *bīna* sēsquipedālia⁵ paulum ab imō⁶ praeacūta, dimēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus *immissa* in flūmen *dēfixerat* fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō⁷ *dērēctē* ad perpendiculum,⁸ sed *prōnē* ac fastigātē, ut secundum⁹

nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, iis itē contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īferiōre parte¹⁰ contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īsuper bipedālibus¹¹ trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum



PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; *bb*, trabes bipedales; *cc*, fibulae;
dd, directa materia longuriis cratibusque constrata;
cc, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

tignōrum iūctūra¹² **distābat**, binīs utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur¹³; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs¹⁴ tanta erat operis firmitūdō¹⁵ atque ea¹⁶ rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vis **aquae** sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā **māteriā** iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis cratibusque

cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē¹⁷ agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbaris immissae, his dēfēnsōribus¹⁸ eārum rērum vis minuerētur neu ponti nocērent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 17

VOCABULARY

commemorō, 1, <i>mention</i>	īnsuper, <i>above</i>
dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, <i>decide</i>	fibula, ae, f., <i>brace</i>
tūtus, a, um, <i>safe</i>	disclūdō, 3, clūsī, clūsus, <i>hold apart</i>
tignum, ī, n., <i>timber</i>	artē, <i>closely</i>
praeacūtus, a, um, <i>sharpened to a point</i>	illigō, 1, <i>bind</i>
dīmētiōr, 4, mēnsus, <i>measure off</i>	contexō, 3, uī, tus, <i>join together</i>
māchinātiō, ōnis, f., <i>mechanical contrivance</i>	longurius, longu'rī, m., <i>long pole</i>
fistūca, ae, f., <i>pile driver</i>	crātēs, ium, f., <i>wicker work</i>
sublica, ae, f., <i>pile</i>	cōnsternō, 3, strāvī, strātus, <i>spread over</i>
dērēctus, a, um, <i>straight</i>	sētius, <i>less</i>
fastīgātē, <i>sloping</i>	ariēs, ietis, m., <i>prop</i>
quadrāgēnī, ae, a, <i>forty each</i>	mediocris, e, <i>moderate</i>
	truncus, ī, m., <i>trunk</i>

NOTES

¹ trānsire: substantive infinitive, subject of esse. ² dignitātis: English derivative? This is a genitive of possession. ³ esse: *belong*. ⁴ rapiditātem: English derivative? ⁵ sēsquipedālia: sēsqui, *one half more*, + pēs + ālis, *pertaining to*. ⁶ imō: *end*. ⁷ modō: *after the manner*. ⁸ perpendiculum: English derivative? ⁹ secundum: *according to*. ¹⁰ ab inferiōre parte: *below the bridge*. ¹¹ bipedālibus: bi, *two*. Compare sēsquipedālibus. ¹² iūctūra: iungō + tūra. ¹³ distinēbantur: dis + teneō. ¹⁴ revinctis: *fastened back*. ¹⁵ firmitūdō: composition? ¹⁶ ea: *such*. ¹⁷ obliquē: English derivative? ¹⁸ dēfēnsōribus: dēfendō + tor.

Cæsar leads his army across and devastates the territory. He promises the Ubii his help if the Suebi trouble them. He learns that the Suebi have retreated. So having accomplished his purpose, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge. He then determines to visit Britain because from there help is sent regularly to the enemies of the Romans in Gaul.

EXERCISE LXXV

Grammar: A. 496; 506. B. 337, 2. *a, f*; 338, 3. G. 665; 666; 432, R. H. 638, 1; 628.

Inflection: nāvigō; portus; plānus.

Order of words: the first word in a sentence often refers to something mentioned in the preceding sentence. For this reason a sentence often begins with a relative or demonstrative pronoun.

CÆSAR SAILS TO INVADE BRITAIN AND SEEKS A PLACE
TO DISEMBARK

Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus¹ nactus² idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit,³ equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum.⁴ prōgredi⁵ et nāvis cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius⁶ esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit⁷ atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius loci haec⁸ erat nātūra, atque ita montibus⁹ angustē¹⁰ mare continēbātur, utī ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs expectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō¹¹ cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut¹² rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut¹² maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iis administrārentur.¹³ Hīs dīmissis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum. datō signō et sublātis ancorīs circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvis cōstituit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 23

VOCABULARY

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus, *set sail*
expōnō, 3, posuī, positus, *array*
adigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *drive, hurl*

nēquāquam, *by no means*
īnstabilis, e, *unsteady*

NOTES

¹ *his rēbus*: i. e. preparations for the voyage. ² *nactus*: *having met with*.
³ *solvit*: probably from Portus Itius, which is perhaps the modern Boulogne, though some authorities identify it with Wissant, a town about ten miles from Calais. ⁴ *portum*: perhaps the harbor of Ambleteuse. ⁵ *prōgredi*: compare with *ēgredior*, noting the prefix. ⁶ *tardius*: adverb. English derivative? ⁷ *Britanniam attigit*: somewhere near Dover. ⁸ *haec*: *such*. ⁹ *montibus*: *cliffs*. ¹⁰ *angustē*: *closely*. ¹¹ *Volusēnō*: Cæsar had sent him ahead to find out what he could, but he had not dared to land. ¹² *ut, maximē ut*: *as, especially as*. ¹³ *administrārentur*: states the purpose of *monuit*.

EXERCISE LXXVI

Grammar: A. 349, *a*; 374, *a*; 410. B. 204, 1; 189, 1; 218, 1. G. 374; 355; 407. H. 450; 451, 1; 431; 477.

Inflection: *ūtor*; *aqua*; *audācter*.

Order of words: a prepositional phrase usually precedes the word which it limits.

THE OBSTACLES WHICH THE ROMANS FACE IN TRYING TO LAND

At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis,¹ quō plērumque² genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī³ nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi⁴ in altō cōstitui⁵ nōn poterant, militibus⁶ autem ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus **dēsiliendum** et in **flūctibus** cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī⁷ aut ex **āridō** aut paulum in **aquam** progressī, omnibus membrīs expeditis, **nōtissimis** locis audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque huius omninō generis pugnae imperitī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōsuērunt ūtēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 24

VOCABULARY

essedārius, essedārī, m.,
charioteer
 membrum, ī, n., *limb*

īnsuēfactus, a, um, *trained*
 imperītus, a, um, *unskilled*
 alacritās, ātis, f., *eagerness*

NOTES

- ¹ essedāriīs: understand *praemissīs*. ² plērumque: synonym of *maximē*.
³ subsecūti: sub, *closely*. ⁴ nisi: *except*. ⁵ cōstitui: *be moored*.
⁶ militibus: with *dēsiliendum*, etc. ⁷ illi: i.e. *barbari*.

Think of English words from *genere*, *prohibēbant*, *manibus*, *gravī*, *onere*, *flūctibus*, *alacritāte*, and observe how the meaning of each is related to that of the Latin word.

EXERCISE LXXVII

Grammar: A, 382, 1: 384, 563, a. B. 191, 2, a; 192, 1; 295, 1, a. G. 356, R. 3; 359; 423, 2, N. 6. H. 433; 434, 2; 565, 3.

Inflection: cunctor; mare; expeditior.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

CÆSAR, IN FORCING BACK THE ENEMY, IS HELPED BY
 THE BRAVE ACT OF A ROMAN SOLDIER

Quod¹ ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr et **mōtus** ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removēri² ab **onerāriīs** nāvibus et **rēmīs** incitārī et ad³ latus apertum hostium cōstitui,⁴ atque inde fundis, **sagittīs**, tormentis hostis prōpellī ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā⁵ et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.⁶ Atque nostris militibus **cunctantibus**, maximē propter altitudinem **maris**, qui⁷ decimae legiōnis **aquilam**⁸ ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter **ēveniret**, “**Dēsilite**,” inquit,⁹ “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.” Hoc cum vōce magnā

dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostis aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum **dēdecus** admitterētūr ūniversī¹⁰ ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

DE BELLO GALlico, IV, 25

VOCABULARY

inūsītātus, a, um, <i>unusual</i>	deus, ī, m., <i>god</i>
funda, ae, f., <i>sling</i>	fēliciter, <i>happily</i>
tormentum, ī, n., <i>military engine</i>	commilitō, ōnis, m., <i>fellow soldier</i>
prōpellō, 3. pulī, pulsus, <i>force back</i>	prōdō, 3. didī, ditus, <i>betray</i>
submoveō, 2. mōvī, mōtus, <i>drive off</i>	meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i>
obtestor, 1, <i>appeal to</i>	admittō, 3. mīsī, missus, <i>permit</i>

NOTES

¹ quod: i.e. the difficulty of landing. ² removēri: depends on iussit.
³ ad: off. ⁴ cōstitui: to be moored. ⁵ figurā: states a cause of permōti.
 English derivative? ⁶ pedem rettulērunt: fell back. ⁷ quī: the antecedent is the subject of inquit below. ⁸ aquilam: the standard of the legion.
⁹ inquit: synonym of dicō. ¹⁰ ūniversī: adjective. English derivative?

EXERCISE LXXVIII

Grammar: A. 315, c; 370. B. 253, 2; 187, III. G. 319; 347. H. 516, 1; 429.

Inflection: possum: litus; alius.

Order of words: prepositions regularly precede the words which they govern.

AFTER A SHARP FIGHT CÆSAR MAKES A LANDING AND
 ROUTS THE ENEMY

Pugnātum est¹ ab utrīsque ācritēr. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere² neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō **nōtis**

omnibus vadis, ubi ex **litore**³ aliquōs singularis ex nāvī ēgredientis cōspexerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant,⁴ alii ab⁵ latere apertō in ūiversōs⁶ tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit, et quōs⁷ labōrantis cōspexerat, his subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in **āridō** cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostis impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque **insulam** capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 26

VOCABULARY

servō, 1, *keep*

aggregō, 1, *attach* (lit. *crowd to*)

singularis, e, *one by one*

scapha, ae, f., *skiff*

speculātōrius, a, um, *spy*

nāvigium, nāvī'gī, n., *boat*

NOTES

¹ **pugnātum est**: translate by a personal form. ² **insistere**: synonym of **cōsistō**. ³ **ex litore**: with **cōspexerant**. ⁴ **circumsistēbant**: compare with **insistō** and **cōsistō**. ⁵ **ab**: *on*. ⁶ **ūiversōs**: *the main body*.
⁷ **quōs**: the antecedent is **hīs**.

Think of English words from **aggregābat**, **cōspexerant**, **incitātis**, **latere**, **apertō**, **subsidia**, **āridō**, **insulam**, and observe the connection in meaning between the Latin word and the English derivative.

The Britons ask for peace after the first battle, but again renew hostilities. Cæsar defeats them, but a storm and the tide damage his fleet, and, after receiving offers of peace once more, he returns to Gaul.

EXERCISE LXXIX

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 500, 4; 531, 2. B. 191, 1; 337, 8, *b*, 2; 382, 2. G. 356; 430; 630. H. 433; 622; 590.

Inflection: **reficiō**; **aestus**; **humilior**.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun which it limits.

CÆSAR GIVES ORDERS FOR THE BUILDING OF A FLEET,
AND THEN SETTLES A QUESTION OF DAMAGES WITH
THE PIRUSTÆ

Lūciō Domitiō, Appiō Claudiō cōsulibus discēdēns ab hibernis Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, uti quam plūrimās possint **hieme** nāvis aedificandās¹ veterēsque **reficiendās** cūrent. Eārum modum fōr-
mamque² dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit **humiliōrēs** quam quibus³ in nostrō **marī** ūti cōsuē-
vimus, atque id eō⁴ magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtatiōnēs **aestuum** minus magnōs ibi **flūctūs** fieri⁵ cognōverat; ad onera ac
multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquis ūtimur maribus. Hās omnis actūariās imperat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitās⁶ adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvis ex Hispāniā apportārī⁷ iubet. Ipse conventibus⁸ Galliae citeriōris **perāctis** in Īllyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pīrustis finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitatibus militēs imperat⁹ certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrustae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrēt omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā¹⁰ ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūci iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitatem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitatēs dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 1

VOCABULARY

quotannis, *every year*

onerō, 1, *load*

subductiō, ōnis, f., *beaching*

iūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden*

actuārius, a, um, *swift*

incursiō, ōnis, f., *raid*

satisfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, *give satisfaction*

arbiter, trī, m., *referee*

līs, lītis, f., *damages*

aestimō, 1, *assess*

poena, ae, f., *penalty*

NOTES

¹ *nāvīs aedificandās*: Cæsar intended to make a second expedition to Britain. ² *fōrmam*: English derivative? ³ *quibus*: understand *eās* as antecedent. ⁴ *eō*: *for this reason*. ⁵ *fieri*: *become*. ⁶ *humilitās*: derivation? ⁷ *apportārī*: *ad + portō*. ⁸ *conventibus*: the courts of justice over which the provincial governor presided. ⁹ *imperat*: *levies*. ¹⁰ *perceptā*: synonym of *cognōscō*.

Think of English words from *aedificandās*, *onera*, *conventibus*, *doceant*, *arbitrōs*, *aestiment*, and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

Six hundred ships of the kind described above and twenty-eight war vessels are built for Cæsar. He orders them to assemble at Portus Itius, ready for the passage to Britain. He himself with four legions and eight hundred horsemen invades the land of the Treveri, who have disregarded his commands.

EXERCISE LXXX

Grammar: A. 418; 564; 580. B. 226; 296, 2; 314, 1. G. 397; 550, 1, 2; 650. H. 480; 567, 1; 642; 643.

Inflection: *ostendō*; *fidēs*; *alter*.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the modifiers of a verb is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, unless changed by emphasis.

HOW THE TWO CHIEFS OF THE TREVERI ACTED ON
CÆSAR'S ARRIVAL IN THEIR TERRITORY

Haec cīvitas¹ longē plūrimū² tōtius Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitate duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque³ dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum⁴ vēnit, sē suōsque omnis in officiō futūrōs neque ab amicitia populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēveris gererentur ostendit. At⁵ Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iisque qui per aetatem in armis esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam⁶

abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine⁷ per mediōs finis Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit; sed posteāquam⁸ nōn nulli principēs ex eā civitate et auctoritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnerunt et de suis privātis rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitatī cōsulere⁹ nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsereretur lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit¹⁰: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō¹¹ facilius civitatem in officio contineret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprudentiam lāberetur; itaque civitatem in suā potestate esse, sēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās civitatisque fortunās eius fidei permissūrum. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 3

VOCABULARY

tangō, 3, tetigī, tāctus, *touch*
 principātus, ūs, m., *leadership*
 aetās, ātis, f., *age*
 ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

idcirco, *for this reason*
 plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*
 lābor, 3, lāpsus, *go wrong*

NOTES

¹ civitās: i. e. that of the Trēverī. ² plūrimum: with valet; *is the strongest*.
³ simul atque: *as soon as*. ⁴ eum: Caesar. ⁵ at: synonym of sed.
⁶ Arduennam: *of Ardennes*. ⁷ magnitudine: describes quae. ⁸ posteāquam: = postquam.
⁹ cōsulere: with dative, *look out for*. ¹⁰ mittit: the subject refers to Indūtiomārus. ¹¹ quō: introduces a purpose clause containing a comparative.

Explain the derivation of adventū, amicitia, magnitudine, imprudentiam.

Caesar arranges matters with the leaders of the Treveri and goes to Portus Itius, where he finds the fleet ready for him, with the exception of sixty ships that have been held back by a storm. The chief men of all the states have also assembled there, and most of these he decides to take with him as hostages, fearing an uprising in Gaul while he is away.

EXERCISE LXXXI

Grammar: A. 345; 349, *a*; 504, *b*. B. 203, 1; 204, 1; 338, 1, *a, c*. G. 365; 374; 428, 2. H. 440, 3; 451, 1; 475, 2; 626.

Inflection: audeō; commūnis; ille.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity, being emphatic, usually precede the word which they modify.

DUMNORIX IS RELUCTANT TO ACCOMPANY CAESAR TO
BRITAIN

Erat ūnā cum cēterīs¹ Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primīs cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc² quod³ in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri; quod dictum⁴ Aeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandi aut dēprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitiibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim⁵ quod insuētus **nāvigandī mare** timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam⁶ id obstinātē⁷ sibi negārī vidit, omnī spē impetrandi **adēptā** principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre⁸: Nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut quōs⁹ in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret¹⁰; fidem reliquīs interpōnere,¹¹ iūs iūrandum poscere, ut quod esse ex ūsū¹² Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 6

VOCABULARY

dēprecor, 1, *beg off*

insuētus, a, um, *unaccustomed*

religiō, ōnis, f., *scruple*

negō, 1, *refuse*

sollicitō, 1, *stir up*

sēvocō, 1, *call aside*

territō, 1, *terrify*

spoliō, 1, *plunder*

NOTES

¹ *cēteris*: synonym of *reliqui*, referring to those who were going with Cæsar. ² *hūc*: to this. ³ *quod*: the fact that. ⁴ *dictum*: a noun, referring to *sibi* . . . *dēferri*. ⁵ *partim*: adverb from *pars*. ⁶ *posteaquam*: = *postquam*. ⁷ *obstinātē*: observe the termination. English derivative? ⁸ *territāre*: depends on *coepit*. It implies an idea of *saying*, on which *feri* and *esse* depend. ⁹ *quōs*: the antecedent is *hōs*. ¹⁰ *necāret*: synonym of *interficiō*. ¹¹ *interpōnere*: to *pledge*. It depends on *coepit*. ¹² *ex ūsū*: of *advantage*.

Observe the force of the prefix in *dēferri*, *insuētus*, *sēvocāre*, *interpōnere*.

EXERCISE LXXXII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*. 3: 367: 496. B. 187, II, *a*: 201, 2: 337, 2, *a, f*. G. 369: 346: 665: 666. H. 442: 426, I: 638, I.

Inflection: *coepi*: *cōnsilium*; *liber*.

Order of words: the modifiers of a word precede or follow it, according as they are, or are not, emphatic.

DURING THE EMBARKATION DUMNORIX ATTEMPTS TO
ESCAPE, BUT IS OVERTAKEN AND PUT TO DEATH

Quā rē¹ cognitā Cæsar, quod tantum civitāti Aeduae dignitātis² tribuēbat, coercendum³ atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid⁴ sibi ac rei publicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter vīginti quinque in eō locō commorātus,⁵ quod Cōrus⁶ **ventus nāvigiatiōnem** impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locis flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam⁷ ut in officiō Dumnorīgem contineret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus⁸ **tempestātem** militēs equitēsque **cōnscendere** nāvis iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castris īnscente⁹ Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Cæsar, intermissā profectione atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īsequendum mittit retrahique imperat; sī vim faciat neque

pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil¹⁰ hunc sē absente prō¹¹ sānō factūrum arbitrātus,¹² quī¹³ praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Aedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 7

VOCABULARY

tribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *grant*

coerceō, 2, uī, itus, *check*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness*

prōspiciō, 3, spexī, spectus, *look out*

flō, 1, *blow*

sētius, *less*

retrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, *bring back*

pāreō, 2, uī, —, *obey*

sānus, a, um, *sane*

revocō, 1, *recall*

clāmitō, 1, *shout*

NOTES

¹ quā rē: the facts mentioned in the last chapter. ² dignitātis: with tantum. English derivative? ³ coercendum: understand esse, depending on statuēbat. ⁴ quid: in any way. ⁵ commorātus: synonym of moror. ⁶ Cōrus: the northwest wind. ⁷ dabat operam: he exerted himself. ⁸ nactus: having met. ⁹ insciente: in + sciēns. ¹⁰ nihil: object. ¹¹ prō: like. ¹² arbitrātus: synonym of existimō. ¹³ quī: equivalent to cum causal.

Think of English words from tribuēbat, dēterrendum, prōspiciendum, revocātus, revertuntur, and observe the connection in meaning between the Latin word and the English derivative.

Cæsar sets sail at sunset and with the enthusiastic help of sailors and soldiers reaches Britain the next day about noon. He lands without mishap. Learning the location of the enemy, he sets out at once for them, but has no decisive engagement.



NAVIGIUM

EXERCISE LXXXIII

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 531, 2; 540, 2. B. 201, 2; 282, 2; 286, 1. G. 369; 630; 541. H. 442; 590; 588, II.

Inflection: nūntiō: diēs: superus (compare).

Order of words: temporal clauses usually precede, clauses of purpose and result usually follow, the verb on which they depend.

A STORM CAUSES A DISASTER TO THE FLEET

Postrīdiē eius diēi¹ māne tripartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem² misit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur.³ His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Quīntō Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiarent superiōre nocte maximā **coortā tempestāte** prope omnis nāvis afflictās atque in **litus** ēiectās esse, quod neque **ancorae fūnēs**que sustinērent neque **nautae gubernātōrēs**que vim tempestātis pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum⁴ acceptum.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 10

VOCABULARY

māne, *early*

tripartitō, *in three divisions*

aliquantum, *ī, n., a little*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view*

ēiciō, 3. iēcī, iectus, *throw out*

NOTES

¹ eius diēi: i.e. on which his soldiers had put the enemy to flight.

² expeditiōnem: expeditō + tiō; *raid*. ³ persequerentur: composition?

⁴ incommodum: the prefix has a negative force.

EXERCISE LXXXIV

Grammar: A. 345; 382, 1; 504. B. 203, 1; 191, 1; 338, 1, *a.* G. 365; 356; 428. H. 440, 3; 433; 626.

Inflection: mūniō; maior; idem.

Order of words: modifiers of either word of an ablative absolute often are placed between these words, the particular arrangement depending on the emphasis.

CÆSAR PROCURES WORKMEN, REPAIRS THE DAMAGE,
AND STARTS AGAIN

His rēbus¹ cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur; eadem ferē² quae ex nūntiīs litterisque cognōverat cōram perspicit,³ sic ut āmissīs circiter quadrāgintā nāvibus reliquae tamen **reficī** posse magnō negōtiō⁴ vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit⁵ ut⁶ quam plūrimās possit iīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvīs instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae⁷ ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnīs nāvīs subducī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī.⁸ In his rēbus circiter diēs decem cōsumit nē nocturnīs⁹ quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis eādem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant summā¹⁰ imperī bellique administrandī commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cuius finis ā maritimīs¹¹ civitātibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis,¹² ā **marī** circiter milia passuum octōgintā. Huic¹³ superiōre tempore cum reliquīs civitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 11

VOCABULARY

revocō, 1, *recall*

faber, brī, m., *workman*

NOTES

¹ *his rēbus*: i. e. the disaster to the fleet. ² *ferē*: an adverb is usually placed next to the word which it modifies. ³ *perspicit*: compare with *dēspiciō* and *cōspiciō*. ⁴ *negōtiō*: shows the manner of *refici*. ⁵ *scribit*: implies an order. ⁶ *ut*: introduces *instituat*. ⁷ *operae*: = *difficultās*. ⁸ *omnis . . . coniungī*: forms the subject of *esse*. ⁹ *nocturnīs*: *nox* + *urnus*, *pertaining to*. ¹⁰ *summā*: a noun. ¹¹ *maritimīs*: *mare* + *timus*, *pertaining to*. ¹² *Tamesis*: *the Thames*. ¹³ *huic*: i. e. Cassivellaunus, one of the great heroes of ancient Britain.

EXERCISE LXXXV

Grammar: A. 283; 284; 414; 418. B. 167; 168; 223; 226. G. 205; 211; 403; 397. H. 393; 479; 480.

Inflection: *appellō* (3): *īnsula*; *ūnus*.

Order of words: the modifiers of the predicate are usually arranged, from the beginning, in the order of their importance.

THE SIZE AND SHAPE OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS

Īnsula¹ *nātūrā* triquetra, cuius *ūnum* *latus* est *contrā*² *Galliam*. *Huius* *lateris* *alter* *angulus*, *quī* est ad *Cantium*,³ *quō* *ferē* *omnēs* ex *Galliā* *nāvēs* **appelluntur**, ad *orientem* *sōlem*, *īnferior* ad *merīdiem*⁴ *spectat*. *Hoc* *latus* *tenet*⁵ *circiter* *mīlia* *passuum* *quīngenta*. *Alterum* *vergit* ad *Hispaniam* atque *occidentem* *sōlem*; *quā* ex⁶ *parte* est *Hibernia* *īnsula*, *dīmidiō* *minor*, ut *exīstimātur*, *quam* *Britannia*, *sed* *parī* *spatiō* *trānsmīssūs* atque⁷ ex *Galliā* est in *Britanniam*. In *hōc* *mediō* *cursū* est *īnsula*, *quae* *appellātur* *Mona*; *complūrēs* *praetereā* *minōrēs* *obiectae* *īnsulae* *exīstimantur*, *dē* *quibus* *īnsulīs* *nōn* *nūllī* *scripsērunt* *diēs* *continuōs* *trīgintā* *sub*⁸ *brūmam* *esse* *noctem*. *Nōs* *nihil* *dē* *eō* *percontātiōnibus* *reperiēbāmus*, *nisi* *certis* ex **aquā**⁹ *mēnsūris* *breviōrēs* *esse* *quam* in *continentī* *noctīs* *vidēbāmus*. *Huius* est *longitūdō*¹⁰ *lateris*, ut *fert* *illōrum* *opīniō*, **septingentōrum** *mīlium*. *Tertium* est *contrā* *septentrionēs*, *cui* *parti* *nūlla* est *obiecta* *terra*; *sed* *eius* *angulus* *alter*

maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc milium passuum **octingentōrum** in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū vicīēs centum milium passuum. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 13

VOCABULARY

triquetrus, a, um, triangular
angulus, ī, m., angle, corner
dīmidium, dīmi'dī, n., half
trānsmisus, ūs, m., crossing
scribō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write

brūma, ae, f., winter solstice
 (lit. *shortest*)
percontātiō, ōnis, f., inquiry
mēnsūra, ae, f., measurement
vicīēs, twenty times

NOTES

¹ **insula**: understand the verb. ² **contrā**: *opposite*. ³ **Cantium**: *Kent*.
⁴ **ad merīdiem**: is this true? **Merīdiem** = **medius** + **diēs**. ⁵ **tenet**: *extends*.
⁶ **ex**: *on*. ⁷ **atque**: *as*. ⁸ **sub**: *about*. ⁹ **ex aquā**: i.e. by means of the water-clock. ¹⁰ **longitūdō**: composition?

Think of English words from **orientem, sōlem, occidentem, obiectae, spectat, centum**, and observe the connection in meaning between the Latin word and the English derivative.

EXERCISE LXXXVI

Grammar: A. 415; 418. B. 224; 226. G. 400; 397. H. 473. 2; 480.

Inflection: **efficiō**: **lac**; **multum** (compare).

Order of words: a preposition is usually placed immediately before the word which it governs.

SOME OF THE CUSTOMS OF THE BRITONS

Ex hīs¹ omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī² quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuetūdine. Interiōrēs³ plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed **lacte** et **carne** vivunt pelibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem,⁴ atque hōc⁵ horribiliōrēs⁶ sunt in pugnā aspectū⁷; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

VOCABULARY

serō, 3. sēvī, satus, <i>sow</i>	caeruleus, a, um, <i>blue</i>
vīvō, 3. vīxī, vīctum, <i>live</i>	capillus, ī, m., <i>hair</i>
vestiō, 4. ivī, itus, <i>clothe</i>	prōmittō, 3. mīsi, missus, <i>let grow</i>
vitrum, ī, n., <i>wood</i> , a blue dye	rāsus, a, um, <i>shaved</i>
inficiō, 3. fēcī, fectus, <i>stain</i>	labrum, ī, n., <i>lip</i>

NOTES

¹ hīs: i. e. Britannī. ² hūmānissimī: homō + ānus, *pertaining to*.
³ interiōrēs: English derivative? Understand hominēs. ⁴ colōrem: Eng-
 lish derivative? ⁵ hōc: states a cause. ⁶ horribiliōrēs: English deriva-
 tive from the positive? ⁷ aspectū: compare cōspectus, noting the
 prefix.

EXERCISE LXXXVII

Grammar: A. 345. a; 414; 429. 1. B. 203, 1; 223; 228, 1. b. G. 365;
 403; 385. N. 1. H. 440. 3; 479; 485. 2.

Inflection: eō: genus: alter.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun
 which it limits.

CÆSAR CROSSES THE THAMES IN SPITE OF THE ENEMY'S
 RESISTANCE

Caesar cognitō cōsiliō¹ eōrum² ad flūmen Tamesim in finīs
 Cassivellaunī³ exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō
 pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest.⁴ Eō cum vēnisset, anim-
 advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium
 instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefixisque mūnita,
 eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur.
 His rēbus cognītīs ā captivīs perflugisque Caesar praemissō equitatū
 cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā⁵ celeritatē atque eō
 impetū militēs iērunt, cum⁶ capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs
 impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque
 dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 18

VOCABULARY

sudis, is, f., *stake*

praefigō, 3, fixī, fixus, *set up
in front*

tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter*

exstō, 1, —, —, *stand out*

NOTES

¹ cōsiliō: i. e. of fighting. ² eōrum: the Britons. ³ Cassivellaunī: one of the greatest of the ancient heroes of Britain. ⁴ flūmen . . . potest: not true; Caesar *found* but one. ⁵ eā: = tantā here. ⁶ cum: conjunction. Considering the phrase capite sōlō with eā celeritāte iērunť, what force must cum have?

Determine the force of the prefix in *praefixis, dēfixae, subsequi, exstārent, dīmitterent*.

Cassivellaunus continues the warfare by attacking the Romans' foraging parties, and thus keeping them from going far from the camp in the search for supplies.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII

Grammar: A. 305; 563. B. 250, 1: 295, 1. G. 614: 546. H. 396; 565.

Inflection: dēfendō: celeriter (compare): ipse.

Order of words: an adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it limits.

THE TRINOVANTES SURRENDER TO CAESAR

Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cuius pater in eā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse¹ fugā mortem vitāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in civitātem mittat, quī² praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercitūi, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit.³ Illi imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque misērunt.

VOCABULARY

continēns, entis, f., *continent*vītō, 1, *avoid*

NOTES

¹ ipse: Mandubracius. ² quī, etc.: states the purpose of mittat.³ Mandubracium . . . mittit: by this means he gained their good will.

EXERCISE LXXXIX

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 420, 1, 2; 556. B. 201, 2; 337, 2, a, f; 293, 1. G. 369; 665; 666. H. 442; 638, 1; 604, 1.

Inflection: obses; nōbilis; hīc.

Order of words: dependent clauses, except those of purpose and result, tend to precede the main verb.

AFTER A LAST DESPERATE ATTEMPT TO DEFEAT
THE ROMANS CASSIVELLAUNUS SURRENDERS TO
CÆSAR

Dum haec¹ in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium,² quod esse ad³ mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus⁴ quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque his imperat uti coāctis omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorianur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā, multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumis redūxerunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum⁵ lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset⁶ hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis⁷ populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubrāciō neu Trinovantibus **noceat**.

VOCABULARY

nāvālis, e, *naval*dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt*extrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, *draw out*vectigal, ālis, n., *tribute*interdicō, 3, dixī, dictus, *forbid*

NOTES

¹ haec: i. e. the capture of the chief town of Cassivellaunus. ² Cantium: *Kent*. ³ ad: *near*. ⁴ regiōnibus: for the case, consider *praeerant*. ⁵ civitātum: five had surrendered to Caesar. ⁶ cōstituisset: states a reason for *imperat*. ⁷ vectigālis: with *quid*.

Observe the words in the passage ending in *tiō*. What is the force of this suffix?

Caesar then returns with his fleet safely to Gaul.

EXERCISE XC

Grammar: A. 403, a; 410. B. 215; 218, 1. G. 395; 407. H. 469, 2; 477.

Inflection: *fīō*; *plūs*.

Order of words: the beginning of the clause or sentence is usually the emphatic position.

CÆSAR LEARNS OF THE MURDER OF TASGETIUS

Erat in Carnutibus summō locō¹ nātus Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentia,² quod in omnibus bellis singulārī³ eius operā⁴ fuerat⁵ ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc⁶ annum rēgnantem⁷ inimici⁸ palam multis ex civitāte auctōribus⁹ interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrīs pertinēbat,¹⁰ nē civitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, Lūcium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque¹¹ operā¹² cognōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse mūnītum. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 25

VOCABULARY

palam, *openly*impulsus, ūs, m., *instigation*

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus,

seize

NOTES

¹ locō: *rank*. ² benevolentīā: bene + volō + tia. ³ singulārī: English derivative? ⁴ operā: synonym of opus. ⁵ fuerat: translate as erat. ⁶ hunc: refers to Tasgetius. ⁷ rēgnantem: synonym of regō. ⁸ inimicī: in + amīcus. ⁹ auctōribus: augeō + tor, *instigators*. ¹⁰ ad plūrīs pertinēbat: i.e. several persons were concerned in it. Note multis auctōribus above. ¹¹ quōrum: the antecedent is hōs. ¹² operā: with interfectum.

Ambiorix, one of the chiefs of the Eburones, incites a serious revolt among several of the Gallic tribes, the Nervii among others. The winter quarters of Cicero, the commander of Cæsar's forces in this tribe, are besieged, and the situation is critical. Cicero gets a letter through the enemy's lines to Cæsar, and the latter at once marches to his relief with what troops he can gather.

EXERCISE XCI

Grammar: A. 345; 376; 531, 2. B. 203, 1; 188, 1; 282, 2. G. 365; 352; 630. H. 440, 3; 425, 2.

Inflection: cōfirmō; mille; certior.

Order of words: a variation from the usual position of a word makes the word emphatic.

LEARNING OF THE GAULS' ADVANCE, CÆSAR
PURPOSELY BUILDS A VERY SMALL CAMP TO
LURE THEM ON

Gallī rē cognitā¹ per explorātōrēs **obsidiōnem** relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Hac² erant armāta circiter milia sexāgintā. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum³ ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōstrāvimus repetit,⁴ quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc admonet⁵ iter cautē⁶ diligenterque faciat.⁷ Perscribit in litterīs hostis ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātis suōs

facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmīcandum animō cōnfīrmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra, et circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns **vallem** et rīvum multītūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī periculī rēs tantulis cōpiīs inīquō⁸ locō dīmīcāre⁹; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum¹⁰ Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte¹¹ existimābat. Cōnsidit et quam aquisimō potest locō castra commūnit¹²; atque haec etsī erant exigua¹³ per sē, vix hominum milium **septem**, praesertim nūllis cum impedimentis, tamen angustīs viārum¹⁴ quam maximē potest contrahit eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem¹⁵ hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnīs partis dimissis explōrat quō¹⁶ commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 49

VOCABULARY

perscribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus,

write in full

rīvus, ī, m., *stream*

tantulus, a, um, *so little*

speculātor, ōris, m., *spy*

NOTES

- ¹ *rē cognitā*: i. e. the fact that Cæsar was coming to the relief of Cicero.
² *haec*: refers to *cōpiīs*, but takes the gender of *mīlia*. ³ *Gallum*: a slave of Vertico, a Nervian. He had helped Cicero before. ⁴ *repetit*: composition? ⁵ *admonet*: = *monet*. ⁶ *cautē*: adverb from the participle of *caveō*. ⁷ *faciat*: shows purpose. ⁸ *inīquō*: in + *aequus*. ⁹ *dīmīcāre*: used as a noun. ¹⁰ *liberātum*: verb formed from *liber*. Understand *esse*.
¹¹ *remittendum dē celeritāte*: *he might relax his speed*. ¹² *commūnit*: the prefix is intensive. ¹³ *exigua*: synonym of *parvus*. ¹⁴ *angustiīs viārum*: *by narrowing the streets*. ¹⁵ *contemptiōnem*: English derivative?
¹⁶ *quō*: interrogative.

Explain the derivation of *explōrātōrēs*, *multītūdinem*, *celeritāte*. What is the stem of *speculātōribus*, and what is its meaning?

EXERCISE XCII

Grammar: A. 423, 1; 507, 3. B. 230; 338, 4, *b*: 339, 1. G. 393; 433. H. 486; 631.

Inflection: recipiō; equester; uterque.

Order of words: prepositional phrases usually limit a word which follows them.

BOTH ARMIES AVOID A DECISIVE BATTLE

Eō diē parvulis¹ equestribus proeliis ad **aquam** factis utrique sēsē suō locō² continent, — Galli,³ quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulatiōne hostis in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā **vallem** prō castris proeliō contenderet⁴; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstrui atque in hīs administrandis rēbus quam maximē concursārī⁵ et cum simulatiōne agi timōris iubet.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 50

VOCABULARY

forte, *by chance*

ēliciō, 3, uī, itus, *entice*

citrā, *this side of*

rīvus, ī, m., *stream*

obstruō, 3, strūxī, strūctus,

block up

conkursō, 1, *run to and fro*

NOTES

¹ parvulis: parvus + ulus, *little*. Compare tantulus. ² locō: without in, as often. ³ Galli: understand sēsē suō locō continent. ⁴ contenderet: states the purpose of sēsē suō locō continent understood. ⁵ concursārī: impersonal.

Observe how the phrases in the passage illustrate the rule for the order of words.

EXERCISE XCIII

Grammar: A. 401; 420, 1, 2. B. 214, 1. *b*; 227, 2, *a*, *b*. G. 405; 410. H. 462; 489, 1.

Inflection: volō; manus; quis.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity usually precede the word which they modify.

AFTER LURING THE GAULS ON TO THE ATTACK CAESAR
PUNISHES THEM SOUNDLY

Quibus omnibus rēbus¹ hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō² locō cōstituunt, nostris vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs³ prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem.⁴ Ac sic nostrōs contempserunt ut obstrūctīs⁵ in speciem⁶ portis singulis ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, alii vāllum manū scindere, alii fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō⁷ celeriter hostis in fugam dat, sic utī omninō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnis armis exiit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 51

VOCABULARY

praecō, ōnis, m., *herald*

contemnō, 3, tempisī, temptus,

despise

caespes, itis, m., *sod*

intrōrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break*
into

scindō, 3, scidī, scissus, *tear down*

exuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *strip*

NOTES

¹ quibus rēbus: i. e. those mentioned in the preceding chapter. ² inīquō: in + aequus. ³ circummissis: composition? ⁴ potestātem: *permission*. ⁵ obstrūctis: participle from obstruō. English derivative? ⁶ in speciem: *for the sake of appearance*. ⁷ ēmissō: composition?

EXERCISE XCIV

Inflection: vereor; diēs.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word usually stands first.

CAESAR PRAISES CICERO FOR HIS BRAVE DEFENSE

Longius prōsequi veritus,¹ quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Īnstitūtās turrīs, testūdīnēs, mūnitiōnēsque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque² esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātīm tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīni et Cottae³ certius ex captivīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, milites cōsōlātur et cōnfirmat. Interim ad Labiēnum⁴ per Rēmōs incredibili celeritāte dē victoriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum⁵ ab hibernis Cicerōnis milia passuum abesset circiter sexāgintā cōque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmōr orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō⁶ victōriae grātulātiōque⁷ ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 52

VOCABULARY

conlaudō, 1, *praise highly*

singillātīm, *one at a time*

testimōnium, testimōnī, n., *evidence*

cōntiō, ōnis, f., *assembly*

cōsōlor, 1, *speak kindly to*

fāma, ae, f., *report*

NOTES

¹ *veritus:* i. e. Caesar. ² *decimum quemque:* *one in ten.* ³ *Sabīni et Cottae:* treacherously killed by Ambiorix, after their forces had been ambushed. ⁴ *Labiēnum:* he was wintering among the Remi. ⁵ *cum:* considering the short time between *hōram nōnam* and *mediam noctem* and the long distance traversed, what must *cum* mean? ⁶ *significātiō;* *signum + faciō + tiō.* ⁷ *grātulātiō:* from *grātulor, congratulate.*

EXERCISE XCV

Inflection: maneo; initium.

Order of words: when a noun is modified by an adjective and a genitive, the order often is: adjective, genitive, noun — the particular arrangement depending on emphasis.

THE WIDELY FELT DESIRE AMONG THE GAULS FOR A
REVOLT KEEPS CAESAR UNEASY

Hāc fāmā¹ ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēni oppugnāre dēcrēverat,² noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnis in Trēverōs reducit. Caesar Fabium³ cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam⁴ trīnīs⁵ hibernīs hiemāre cōstituit; et quod tantī **mōtūs** Galliae exstiterant, tōtam **hiemem** ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō⁶ dē Sabini morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae civitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs lēgatiōnēsque in omnis partis dimittēbant, et quid reliquī cōsiliī caperent atque unde initium belli fieret explōrābant,⁷ nocturnaue⁸ in locis dēsertis concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn⁹ aliquem dē cōsiliis ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In his ab Lūciō Rōsciō, quem legiōni tertiae decimae praefēcerat, certior factus est magnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum civitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse, neque longius milibus passuum octō ab hibernīs suis āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis¹⁰ discessus¹¹ vidērētur. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitātis ad sē **ēvocātis** aliōs territandō,¹² cum sē scire quae fierent dēnūntiāret,¹³ aliōs cohortandō magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 53, 54

VOCABULARY

existō, 3, **stitī**, —, *arise*
cōsultō, 1, *deliberate earnestly*

sollicitūdō, **inis**, f., *anxiety*
adeō, *to such a degree, so*

NOTES

¹ *fāmā*: i. e. about Cæsar's success. ² *dēcrēverat*: synonym of *cōstituō*.
³ *Fabium*: in charge of the winter quarters among the Morini. ⁴ *Samarobrivam*: a town of the Ambiani. ⁵ *trīnis*: used for *tribus* with *hibernis*, a noun used only in the plural. ⁶ *incommodō*: in + *commodum*. ⁷ *explōrābant*: compare with the noun *explōrātor*. ⁸ *nocturna*: *nox* + *urnus*, a time suffix. ⁹ *quin*: *without*. ¹⁰ *similis*: English derivative? ¹¹ *discessus*: noun from *discēdō*. ¹² *terrītandō*: *by frightening*. ¹³ *dēnūntiāret*: composition?

Observe the force of the prefix in *perlātā*, *redūcit*, *extiterant*, *dīmittēbant*, *præfēcerat*, *āfuisse*.

With the exception of the Aedui and the Remi, whom Cæsar had always especially honored, there is hardly a state that he does not suspect of considering a revolt.

EXERCISE XCVI

Order of words: in general a phrase or limiting expression is more likely to limit or depend on a word closely following it than on one that has gone before. This is because the limiting word is usually the emphatic part of the phrase.

INDUTIOMARUS TRIES TO ROUSE THE GERMANS AND THE GAULS

Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtius **hiemis** nūllum tempus intermisērunt quī¹ trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, civitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ūlli civitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsiret, cum sē **bis** expertōs dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencterōrum trānsitū²; nōn esse amplius fortunam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā finitimīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā magnīs præmiīs ad sē allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātīōnēs concurrerent, grātiam³ atque amicitiam pūblicē privātimque⁴ peterent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 55

VOCABULARY

sollicitō, 1, <i>stir up</i>	exsul, ulis, m., f., <i>exile</i>
pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money</i>	damnō, 1, <i>convict</i>
lābor, 3, lāpsus, <i>slip</i>	alliciō, 3, lexī, lectus, <i>attract</i>
exerceō, 2, uī, itus, <i>train</i>	

NOTES

¹ quīn: *without*. ² trānsitū: a verbal noun from trānseō. ³ grātiam: i. e. of Indutiomarus. ⁴ privātīm: compare with nōminātīm, singillātīm.

Select from the passage words that by their position illustrate the rule for the order of words.

EXERCISE XCVII

Order of words: an adverb usually precedes the word which it modifies.

SEVERAL STATES REBEL AGAINST THE ROMANS

Interfectō Indūtiomārō,¹ ut docuimus, ad eius propinquōs ā Trēveris imperium dēfertur. Illi finitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventis² nōn nullis civitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent³; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt.⁴ Quibus rēbus cognitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduatucōs, Menapiōs adiūctis Cisrhēnānis⁵ omnibus Germānis esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitātibus cōsilia comunicāre,⁶ ā Trēveris Germānōs crēbris lēgatiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 2

VOCABULARY

sollicitō, 1, <i>stir up</i>	foedus, eris, n., <i>treaty</i>
pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money</i>	cōgitō, 1, <i>consider</i>
societās, ātis, f., <i>alliance</i>	

NOTES

¹ **Indūtiomārō**: he was killed by the soldiers of Labienus, who all aimed their weapons at him when he approached the camp with his cavalry in a foolhardy way. Labienus had offered great rewards to those who should kill Indutiomarus and thus end the uprising. ² **inventis**: composition? ³ **obsidibusque . . . cavent**: *give hostages as security for the money*. ⁴ **adiungunt**: composition? ⁵ **Cisrhēnānis**: *cis, on this side of, + Rhēnus + ānus, pertaining to*. ⁶ **commūnicāre**: English derivative?

Think of English words from **dēfertur**, **pecūniam**, **ulteriōrēs**, **inventis**, **foedere**, and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

EXERCISE XCVIII

Order of words: the modifiers of the parts of an ablative absolute often stand between the words that compose it, the degree of emphasis of each word determining its position.

AFTER A RAID AMONG THE NERVII CÆSAR ENTERS
THE TERRITORY OF THE SENONES

Itaque nōndum **hieme** cōfectā, proximīs quattuor coāctis legiōnibus, dē imprōvisō in finīs Nerviōrum contendit, et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magnō **pecoris** atque hominum numerō captō atque eā **praedā** militibus concessā vāstātisque agrīs, in dēditionem venire atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōfectō negotiō rūsus in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut¹ instituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium belli ac dēfectionis hoc² esse arbitrātus,³ ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam⁴ Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōfinēs⁵ erant hī Senonibus civitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnixerant, sed ab hōc cōsiliō āfuisse existimābantur. Hāc rē⁶ prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eō pervenit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 3

VOCABULARY

vēr, vēris, n., *spring*
 indīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus, *appoint*
 dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt*

postpōnō, 3, posuī, positus,
deem less important
 suggestus, ūs, m., *tribunal*

NOTES

¹ ut: notice the mood following. ² hoc: refers to praeter . . . Trēverōs, i. e. their absence. ³ arbitrātus: synonym of exīstimō. ⁴ Lutetiam: the modern Paris. ⁵ cōnfinēs: synonym of finitimus. ⁶ hāc rē: i. e. ab . . . āfuisse.

EXERCISE XCIX

Order of words: in any phrase the determining or emphatic word comes first.

CÆSAR'S ARRIVAL DISCONCERTS THE SENONES AND
 THE CARNUTES, AND THEY SUBMIT

Cognitō eius¹ adventū Accō,² quī p̄ncēps eius cōnsili³ fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre. Cōnantibus,⁴ priusquam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessariō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduōs, quōrum antiquitus⁵ erat in fidē civitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduīs dat veniam excūsatiōnemque⁶ accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis⁷ bellī, nōn quaestiōnis⁸ esse arbitrābatur.⁹ Obsidibus imperātis centum hōs Aeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsq̄ue mittunt ūsī dēprecātoribus¹⁰ Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. **Peragit** concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat civitātibus.

DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 4

VOCABULARY

adsum, esse, fuī, —, *be present*
 dēprecor, 1, *beg off*
 libenter, *willingly*
 venia, ae, f., *pardon*

aestivus, a, um, *of summer, summer*
 custōdiō, 4, ivī, itus, *watch*
 clientēla, ae, f., *protection*

NOTES

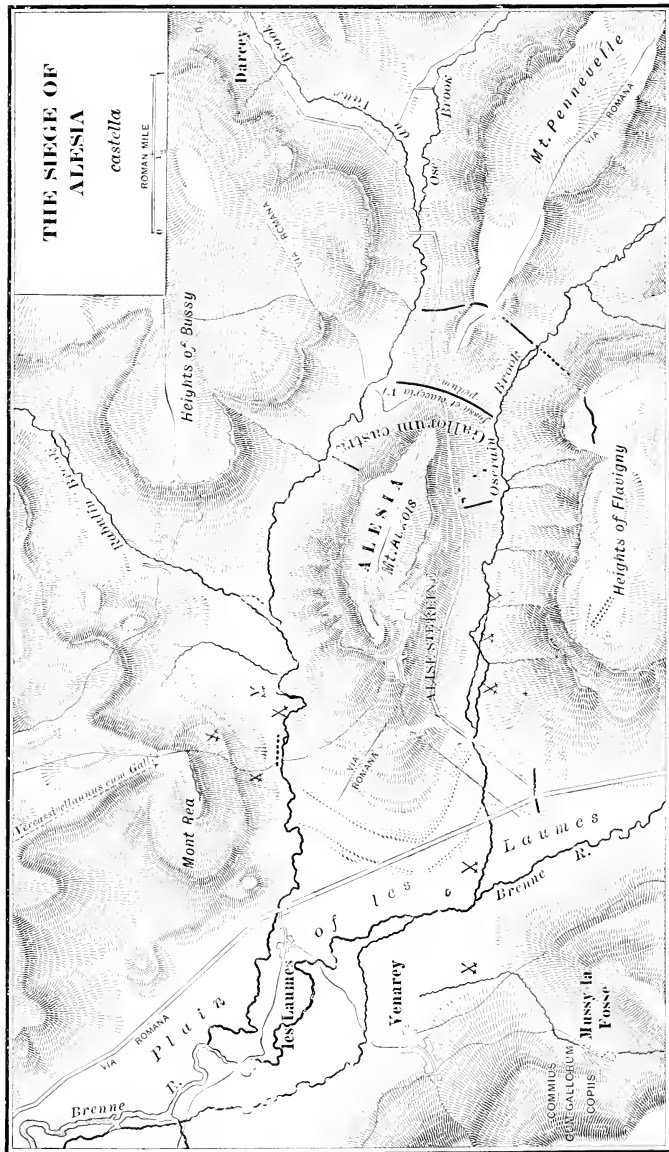
¹ *eius*: i.e. Cæsar's. ² *Accō*: a leader of the Senones. ³ *cōnsilī*: i.e. for a revolt. ⁴ *cōnantibus*: i.e. *in oppida convenire*. ⁵ *antīquitus*: adverb from *antīquus*, which is synonymous with *vetus*. ⁶ *excūsātiōnem*: *excūsō + tiō*. ⁷ *instantis*: *impending*, i.e. the one with the Treveri. ⁸ *quaestiōnis*: *quaerō + tiō*. ⁹ *arbitrābātur*: synonym of *existimō*. ¹⁰ *dēprecātōribus*: derivation?

Under the leadership of Vercingetorix, the most heroic figure in the struggle of Gaul against the Romans, a general uprising occurs. After much desperate fighting, sacking of towns, and laying waste of fields, the advantage being on the side of the Romans, Vercingetorix makes a last stand in Alesia, now called Alise-Sainte-Reine, a town in central Gaul.

THE SIEGE OF ALEZIA

castella

ROMAN MILE



DE BELLO GALLICO, VII

VERCINGETORIX WITHDRAWS INTO ALESIA, CAESAR AT HIS HEELS

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut¹ prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque² Alesiam, quod³ est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedimenta⁴ ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedimentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostīs quantum⁴ diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū,⁵ quā maximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus⁶ ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.

THE NATURAL SURROUNDINGS OF ALESIA

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi⁷ **obsidiōne** expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum

fugō, 1, *put to flight*

situs, ūs, m., *situation*

circumvāllō, 1, *build intrenchments around*

admodum, *very*

subluō, 3, —, lūtum, *wash*

¹ ut: notice the mood of conlocāverat. ² prōtinus: synonym of statim.

³ quod: takes the gender of oppidum. ⁴ quantum: *as far as*. ⁵ equitātū: ablative of specification, but translate as subject of the verb which it limits.

⁶ adhortātus: = hortātus. ⁷ nisi: with obsidiōne.

Observe that the words prōtinus, celeriter, proximum, and quantum . . . passum, and the short, crisp phrases make vivid the haste of this flight and the fierceness of the pursuit.

plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō¹ spatiō parī altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam² in altitudinem sex pedum praedūxerant.³ Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus **ūndecim** mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportunīs locīs erant posita octōna castellaque vīginti tria facta, quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua⁴ subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A CAVALRY BATTLE IS FOUGHT, IN WHICH CAESAR'S
GERMAN TROOPS KILL MANY OF THE GAULS

70. Opere⁵ institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem⁶ patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrisque contenditur.⁷ Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū⁸ fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō⁹ nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitudīne¹⁰ impediunt atque angustiōribus portis relictis coartantur. Germāni ācrius ūsque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nullī relictis equīs fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō

plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain*
mediocris, e, *moderate*
fastigium, fastigī, n., *degree*
interdiū, *by day*
excubitor, ōris, m., *watchman*

irruptiō, ōnis, f., *invasion*
coartō, ī, *press together*
ūsque, *all the way*
caedēs, is, f., *slaughter*

¹ interiectō: composition? ² māceriam: synonym of mūrus. ³ praedūxerant: composition? ⁴ qua: *any*. ⁵ opere: i. e. of building the encompassing fortifications. ⁶ longitūdinem: derivation? ⁷ contenditur: impersonal. ⁸ peditātū: synonym of peditēs. Compare equitātus and equitēs. ⁹ additō: participle. English derivative? ¹⁰ multitudīne: states the cause of impediunt.

cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur, veniri¹ ad sē cōnfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nullī perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt.² Vercingetorix iubet portās claudi, nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equis captis Germāni sēsē recipiunt.

VERCINGETORIX SENDS AWAY ALL THE CAVALRY,
URGING THEM TO RAISE FORCES FOR THE RELIEF
OF ALESIA

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānis perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus³ mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitatem adeat omnisque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant; sua in⁴ illōs merita prōpōnit obtestaturque ut suae salutis ratiōnem⁵ habeant, neu⁶ sē optimē dē commūni libertāte meritum⁷ hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlēcta octōgintā unā sēcum interitura dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne⁸ initā frūmentum sē exiguē⁹ diērum trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī¹⁰ posse parcendō. His datis mandātis¹¹ quā erat nostrum opus intermissum secundā vigiliā silentiō¹² equitātum dimittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iis quī nōn pāruerint cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā

claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, *shut*
aetās, ātis, f., *age*
obtestor, 1, *call to witness*
indiligēns, entis, *careless*

intereō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*
parcō, 3, pepercī, parsum, *spare*
poena, ae, f., *punishment*
pāreō, 2, uī, —, *obey*

¹ veniri: *the enemy were coming*. Impersonal. ² irrumpunt: from the root of this verb is derived *irruptiō*. ³ discēdentibus: understand iis. ⁴ in: *toward*. ⁵ ratiōnem: *regard*. ⁶ neu: *and not*. ⁷ meritum: participle; translate by a relative clause. ⁸ ratiōne: *reckoning*. This begins an indirect statement, depending on the verb dēmōnstrat. ⁹ exiguē: synonym of *vix*. ¹⁰ tolerārī: nearly = *ferō*; impersonal. ¹¹ mandātis: noun. ¹² silentiō: noun. English derivative?

Mandubiis compulsa, virītim¹ **distribuit**; frūmentum parcē² et paulātīm mētīri instituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

THE GAULS RAISE A GREAT ARMY AND PROCEED TO
ALESIA

76. Huius operā Commī,³ ut antea⁴ dēmōstrāvīmus, fidēli⁵ atque ūtilī superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannīā Cæsar; prō quibus meritis civitātem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat, atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae⁶ Galliae cōnsēnsiō⁷ fuit libertātis vindicandae⁸ et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumbērent. Coāctis equitum milibus octō et pedītum circiter ducentis quīnquāgintā, haec in Aeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur numerosque inibātur, praefectī cōstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō,

mētior, 4, mēnsus, *measure out*
immūnis, e, *untaxed*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*
attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*
laus, laudis, f., *glory*

recuperō, 1, *recover*
(ops), opis, f., *resources*
incumbō, 3, cubuī, —, *exert oneself*
recēnsēō, 2, uī, us, *review*

¹ virītim: vir + (i)tim, *man by man*. Compare nōminātīm. ² parcē: adverb; compare parcō. ³ Commī: he was sent by Cæsar into Britain to persuade the states there to submit to the Roman rule. ⁴ antea: adverb, synonym of ante. ⁵ fidēli: fidēs + ēlis, *pertaining to*. ⁶ ūniversae: English derivative? Synonym of tōtus. ⁷ cōnsēnsiō: con + sentiō + tiō. ⁸ vindicandae: synonym of dēfendō.

In order to bring about the surrender of Alesia and to prevent other forces being added to those in the town, Cæsar constructed an elaborate system of fortifications, extending fourteen miles. These consisted of deep trenches, high walls, and several rows of sharpened stakes, besides others set up at the bottom of pits, which were covered with branches to conceal them.

cōsobrīnō Vercingetorigis, summa¹ imperī trāditur. His² dēlectī³ ex civitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs **alacrēs** et fidūciae⁴ plēni⁵ ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum⁶ modo tantae multitudinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti⁷ proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptione pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

THE GAULS IN ALESIA DEBATE THEIR FUTURE ACTION.
CRITOGNATUS BEGINS HIS SPEECH

77. At ii quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsūmptō omni frūmentō, inscii⁸ quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortunārum cōsultābant.⁹ Ac variīs dictis sententiis, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius¹⁰ singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis,¹¹ "Nihil," inquit,¹² "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs¹³ civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum his mihi rēs¹⁴ est quī ēruptionem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō

cōsobrīnus, ī, m., *first cousin*
forīs, *outside*
obsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *besiege*
praetereō, 4, ii, itus, *pass over*
exitus, ūs, m., *outcome*

suppetō, 3, petivī, petitus, *hold out*
cēnsēō, 2, ui, us, *propose, consider*
nefārius, a, um, *wicked*
crūdēlitās, ātis, f., *cruelly*
turpis, e, *shameful*

¹ **summa**: noun. ² **his**: i. e. those just mentioned. ³ **dēlectī**: understand **hominēs**. ⁴ **fidūciae**: synonym of **fidēs**. ⁵ **plēni**: synonym of **complētus**. ⁶ **aspectum**: synonym of **cōspectus**. ⁷ **ancipiti**: *in front and rear*. ⁸ **inscii**: in + sciō. ⁹ **cōsultābant**: English derivative? ¹⁰ **eius**: i. e. ōrātiōnis. ¹¹ **auctōritātis**: a quality of **hic**. ¹² **inquit**: defective verb, synonym of **dicō**. ¹³ **habendōs**: understand **esse**. Compare this form with **dictūrus sum** above. **Habeō**, *consider*. ¹⁴ **rēs**: *business*.

Note the size and the spirit of the army which came to free Alesia.

omnium vestrum cōnsensū¹ prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitiā, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse.² Qui³ sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem⁴ patienter⁵ ferant."

CRITOGNATUS APPEALS TO HIS HEARERS NOT TO LOSE FAITH IN THE GAULS WHO HAVE NOT YET BEEN ABLE TO REACH THEM

77. "Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem⁶ (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam⁷ vītāe nostrae iactūrā fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus,⁸ quam ad nostrum auxiliū concitāvimus. Quid,⁹ hominum milibus octōgintā unō locō interfectis, propinquīs¹⁰ cōsanguineisque nostrīs animī fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite¹¹ hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salutis causā suum pericūlum neglēxerunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An,¹² quod ad diem nōn vērērent, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis

resideō, 2, sēdī, —, *linger*
 mollitiā, ae, f., *weakness*
 dignitās, ātis, f., *honor*
 vītā, ae, f., *life*
 iactūra, ae, f., *loss*
 concitō, 1, *stir up*
 cadāver, eris, n., *dead body*

exspoliō, 1, *deprive*
 stultitiā, ae, f., *folly*
 temeritās, ātis, f., *rashness*
 imbēcillitās, ātis, f., *weakness*
 prōsternō, 3, strāvī, strātus, *ruin*
 ergō, *then, therefore*

¹ cōnsensū: con + sentiō + tus. ² paulisper . . . posse: used as a noun in apposition with ista. ³ quī: the antecedent is the subject of reperiuntur. ⁴ dolōrem: doleō + or, act of. ⁵ patienter: adverb from the present participle of patior. English derivative? ⁶ probārem: *should approve*. ⁷ praeterquam: adverb; compare with praeter. ⁸ respiciāmus: introduce the translation by *let*. ⁹ quid: with animī. ¹⁰ propinquīs, etc.: dative of the possessor. In translating, make this the subject of the clause, and render fore by the appropriate tense of *have*. ¹¹ nōlite: *do not*. ¹² an: the sign of a question, introducing the clause beginning with dē. Translate by *or*.

ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine¹ causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaepō, hīs ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum²; cuius rei timōre exterritī³ diem noctemque in opere versantur.”

CRITOGNATUS PROPOSES A BARBAROUS PLAN FOR
RESISTING THE ROMANS

77. “Quid ergō mei cōsili⁴ est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac simili inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus⁵ quī aetate ad bellum inūtilēs⁶ vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt⁷ neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui⁸ et posteris prōdi⁹ pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā¹⁰ Galliā Cimbrī magnāque illātā calamitate finibus quidem nostris aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt, iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbis reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs¹¹ fāmā nōbilis potentisque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agris civitātibusque cōnsidere atque hīs aeternam¹² iniungere¹³ servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiōne bella gessērunt. Quod si ea

exerceō, 2, uī, itus, *occupy*

praesaepiō, 4, saepsī, saeptus,

block

testis, is, m., f., *witness*

ergō, then, therefore

nēquāquam, by no means

similis, e, like

subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *drive*

aetās, ātis, f., *age*

vīta, ae, f., *life*

exemplum, ī, n., *precedent*

aliquandō, at length

lēx, lēgis, f., *law*

invidia, ae, f., *envy*

fāma, ae, f., *reputation*

umquam, ever

¹ animine: note the question sign. ² adventum: subject of appropinquāre. ³ exterritī: synonym of perterritī. ⁴ cōsili: predicate genitive. ⁵ corporibus: ablative of means. ⁶ inūtilēs: in + ūtilis, from ūtor. ⁷ tolerāvērunt: synonym of ferō. ⁸ institui: understand id as subject, referring to exemplum. ⁹ prōdi: synonym of trādō. ¹⁰ dēpopulātā: synonym of populor. ¹¹ quōs: the antecedent is hōrum. ¹² aeternam: synonym of perpetuus. ¹³ iniungere: composition?

quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus¹ subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.”

THE GAULS SEND OUT FROM ALESIA THOSE USELESS
FOR FIGHTING

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut ii quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs² sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius³ experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant⁴; illō tamen potius ūtendum⁵ cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubii,⁶ qui eōs⁷ oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exire cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis⁸ in vāllō custōdiis recipi⁹ prohibēbat.

THE MAIN FORCES OF THE GAULS REACH ALESIA AND
ALL PREPARE FOR A SALLY

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperi permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiam quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre

ignōrō, 1, *be unacquainted with*

commūtō, 1, *change*

valētūdō, inis, f., *sickness*

aetās, ātis, f., *age*

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*

custōdia, ae, f., *guard*

plānitiēs, eī, f., *plain*

¹ *secūribus*: axes, but used as a symbol of Roman authority. ² *inūtilēs*: in + ūtilis, from ūtor. ³ *prius*: with *quam*. ⁴ *dēscendant*: English derivative? ⁵ *ūtendum*: impersonal; an indirect statement with *esse* understood. Make *cōnsiliō* the subject in the translation. ⁶ *Mandubii*: the tribe in whose territory Alesia was situated. ⁷ *eōs*: the Gauls. ⁸ *dispositis*: composition? ⁹ *recipi*: from *being received*.

dēmōnstrāvimus complent, pedestrīsq̄e cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās¹ in locīs superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus² in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs visīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur.³ Itaque prōductis cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integūnt atque aggere explent,⁴ sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

AFTER A FIERCE FIGHT THE GAULS RETREAT AND
THOSE IN THE TOWN LOSE HOPE

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō,⁵ ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī⁶ pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs⁷ sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant,⁸ quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent⁹ et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et īi quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et īi quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter

grātulātiō, ōnis, f., *rejoicing*

laetitia, ae f., *gladness*

crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*

integō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover over*

prōventus, ūs, m., *outcome*

sagittārius, sagittārī, m., *bowman*

armātūra, ae, f., *armor*

ululātus, ūs, m., *yelling*

rēctē, *rightly*

turpiter, *disgracefully*

¹ abductās: composition? ² dēspectus: dēspiciō + tus. ³ excitantur: English derivative? ⁴ explent: note the prefix, and compare with compleō. ⁵ dispositō: composition? ⁶ intentī: adjective. English derivative? ⁷ rārōs: *here and there*. ⁸ interiēcerant: composition? ⁹ succurrerent: sub, *up to*.

factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās¹ et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.² Cum ā merīdiē³ prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā⁴ victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmīs in hostis impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt⁵; quibus in fugam coniectis sagittārii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostrī cēdentis ūsque ad castra īsecūti sui colligendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At īi quī Alesiā prōcessērunt, maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā,⁶ sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

THE GAULS OUTSIDE THE TOWN, HELPED BY THOSE
WITHIN, TRY A NIGHT ATTACK

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō⁷ magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressī ad campestris mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne⁸ quī⁹ in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātis prōicere, fundis, **sagittīs**, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō¹⁰ dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus

laus, laudis, f., *praise*
ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace*
turma, ae, f., *troop*
ūsque, *all the way*
colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *rally*
maestus, a, um, *sad*
crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*

scālae, ārum, f., *scaling ladders*
harpagō, ōnis, m., *wall hook*
silentium, silenti, n., *silence*
campester, tris, tre, *in the plain*
obsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *besiege*
funda, ae, f., *sling*
prōturbō, 1, *drive off*

¹ cupiditās: derivation? ² excitābat: English derivative? ³ merīdiē: medius + diēs. ⁴ dubiā: adjective; compare with dubitō. ⁵ prōpulērunt: composition? ⁶ dēspērātā: composition? ⁷ spatiō: expresses the time within which the action of effectō happened. ⁸ significātiōne: signum + faciō + tiō. ⁹ quī: understand īi, subject of possent, as antecedent. ¹⁰ exaudītō: composition?

attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.¹ Prōspectū² tenebrīs **adēemptō** multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At Mārcus Antōnius et Gāius Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant,³ quā ex parte nostrōs premi intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

THE GAULS, HAVING TWICE TRIED TO FORCE THE
WORKS, RETIRE

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Galli, plūs multitudīne tēlōrum prōficiēbant⁴; posteāquam⁵ propius successērunt, aut sē stimulis⁶ inopināntēs induēbant aut in scrobis dēlāti trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pilis mūrālibus⁷ interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret,⁸ veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs dum ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta⁹ erant prōferunt, priōrēs

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*

librile, is, *throwing a stone weighing
a pound*

sudis, is, f., *stake*

glāns, glandis, f., *bullet*

tenebrae, ārum, f., *darkness*

tormentum, ī, n., *hurling machine*

inopināns, inopinantis, *unaware*

induō, 3, duī, dūtus, *impale*

scrobis, is, m., *pit*

trānsfodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, *run
through*

trāiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus, *transfix*

intereō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*

perrumpō, 3. rūpī, ruptus, *break
through*

¹ prōterrent: prō, *off*. ² prōspectū: compare with cōspectus, noting the prefix. ³ obvenerant: composition? ⁴ plūs prōficiēbant: *they did more execution*. ⁵ posteāquam: = postquam. ⁶ stimulis: Caesar describes these as "stakes a foot long with iron hooks on them." They were driven into the ground around and between pits. ⁷ mūrālibus: mūrus + ālis, *pertaining to*. ⁸ appeteret: synonym of appropinquō. ⁹ praeparāta: composition?

Observe the many words in chapter 81 referring to the equipment used by the Gauls and Romans in the assault.

fossās explent.¹ diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius² suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā³ in oppidum revertērunt.

SIXTY THOUSAND OF THE GAULS PREPARE TO ASSAULT
THE UPPER CAMP

83. Bis magnō cum dētrimentō repulsī Galli quid agant cōsulunt; locōrum⁴ peritōs⁵ adhibent, ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere⁶ circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī, necessariōque paene inīquō⁷ locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec Gāius Antistius Rēgīnus et Gāius Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cognitis per explorātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium sexāgintā milia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum civitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque⁸ pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundi tempus dēfiniunt cum meridiēs⁹ esse videātur. His cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus prope cōfectō sub lūcem¹⁰ itinere post montem sē occultāvit mīlītēsque ex nocturnō¹¹ labōre sēsē **reficere** iussit. Cum iam meridiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestris mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

situs, ūs, m., *location*

circumplector, 3, plexus, *encircle*

lēniter, *moderately*

dēclivis, e, *slope*

pactum, ī, n., *manner*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *be pleasing*

dēfiniō, 4, īvī, itus, *fix*

occultō, 1, *hide*

campester, tris, tre, *in the plain*

¹ explent: compare **compleō**, noting the prefix. ² prius: take with **quam**.

³ infectā: in + faciō. Compare English "done," "undone." ⁴ locōrum: limits peritōs. ⁵ peritōs: understand eōs. ⁶ opere: i. e. the fortifications.

⁷ inīquō: in + aequus. ⁸ quōque: not from quisque. ⁹ meridiēs: medius + diēs.

¹⁰ sub lūcem: *about dawn*. ¹¹ nocturnō: nox + urnus, a time suffix.

THE GAULS SALLY FORTH FROM ALESIA AND UNITE
WITH THEIR FORCES OUTSIDE IN AN ATTACK ON
THE ROMANS

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātis, longuriōs, mūrālis¹ falcis, reliquaeque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert.² Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinētur³ nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs⁴ nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus existit, quod suum pericūlum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentis perturbant.

THE GAULS MAKE A DESPERATE EFFORT TO FORCE THE
ROMAN LINES

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit,⁵ labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque⁶ ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō⁷ maximē contendī conveniat⁸: Galli, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant⁹; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium expectant. Maximē ad¹⁰ superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur,¹¹ quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum¹² loci ad dēclivitatē¹³ fastigium magnum habet mōmentum. Alii tēla coniciunt, alii

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*
crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*
longurius, longurī, m., *long pole*
falx, falcis, f., *hook*
existō, 3, stitī, —, *arise*

vehementer, *furiously*
perfringō, 3, frēgī, frāctus, *break*
through
fastigium, fastigī, n., *slope*
mōmentum, ī, n., *importance*

¹ mūrālis: mūrus + ālis. ² prōfert: composition? ³ distinētur: dis + teneō. ⁴ terrendōs: compare with perterreō. ⁵ cognōscit: understand et connecting this word with submittit. ⁶ utrisque: dative of reference; of both parties. ⁷ quō: expresses time when. ⁸ conveniat: it is fitting. ⁹ dēspērant: composition? ¹⁰ ad: near. ¹¹ labōrātur: impersonal. ¹² inīquum: composition? ¹³ ad dēclivitatē: downward.

testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātis invicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum¹ dat Gallis et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegīt; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

THE GAULS, REPULSED, ATTACK ANOTHER PART OF
THE WORKS

86. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō² labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne³ pugnet; id, nisi necessāriō, nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dimicātiōnum⁴ frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs⁵ dēspērātis campestribus locis propter magnitūdinem mūnitiōnum loca praeupta ascēnsū⁶ temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantis dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent,⁷ falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

CAESAR DRIVES BACK THE GAULS AND GOES TO THE
HELP OF LABIENUS

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscēntem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gāium Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō

dēfatīgō, 1, *weary*

invicem, *in turn*

integer, *gra, grum, fresh*

occultō, 1, *hide*

contegō, 3, *tēxī, tēctus, cover*

suppetō, 3, *petīvī, petītus, hold out*

succumbō, 3, *cubui, —, yield*

frūctus, ūs, *m., reward*

praeuptus, *a, um, steep*

crātēs, *ium, f., wickerwork*

falx, *falcis, f., hook*

lōrica, *ae, f., breastwork*

rescindō, 3, *scidī, scissus, tear down*

adulēscēns, *entis, m., youth; as adj.,*

young

vehementer, *furiously*

¹ ascēsum: noun from ascendō. ² subsidiō: expresses purpose.

³ ēruptiōne: expresses manner. ⁴ dimicātiōnum: derivation? ⁵ interiō-

rēs: understand ii. ⁶ ascēnsū: with praeupta. ⁷ explent: compare with compleō.

ac repulsis hostibus eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortis quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostis adorīri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis ūndecim cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fors obtulit,¹ Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat² Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

THE GALLIC FORCES OUTSIDE ARE DEFEATED, AND
THOSE WITHIN ALESIA LOSE HOPE

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, turmisque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locis superioriibus haec³ dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmōr. Nostrī ēmissis⁴ pilis gladiis⁵ rem gerunt. Repente⁶ post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et pīnceps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria septuāgintā quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit⁷ prōtinus⁸ hāc rē audītā ex castris Gallōrum fuga.

fors, fortis, f., *chance*

vestītus, ūs, m., *clothing, robe*

turma, ae, f., *troop*

dēclīvis, e, *sloping*

dēvexus, a, um, *steep*

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter*

vīvus, a, um, *living*

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus,

seize

¹ obtulit: composition? ² accelerat: ad + celerō; compare the adjective celer. ³ haec: i.e. places. ⁴ ēmissis: synonym of iaciō. ⁵ gladiis: states the means of gerunt. ⁶ repente: synonym of subitō. ⁷ fit, etc.: observe the inversion of the usual order of words. ⁸ prōtinus: synonym of statim and continuō.

Quod¹ nisi crēbrīs subsidiis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiāe dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in civitātēs discēdunt.

THE NEXT DAY AFTER A COUNCIL IN THE TOWN
VERCINGETORIX SURRENDERS WITH THE OTHER
GALLIC CHIEFS

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārū necessitātum,² sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum,³ ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur⁴ dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsidit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtī exercitūi capita singula **praedae** nōmine **distribuit**.

CÆSAR RESTORES PEACE IN GAUL AND DISTRIBUTES
HIS FORCES THROUGHOUT THE COUNTRY

90. His rēbus cōfectis in Aeduōs proficiscitur; civitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit.

dēleō, 2, lēvī, lētus, *destroy*

recuperō, 1, *recover*

vīvus, a, um, *living*

¹ quod: *so that* (literally, *as to which*). ² necessitātum: English derivative? ³ cēdendum: impersonal. ⁴ mittuntur, etc.: observe the inversion of the usual order of words.

Plutarch says that Vercingetorix put on his finest armor and upon his war horse came forth from the town. After riding around Cæsar several times as he sat in his tribunal, he dismounted, took off his armor, and seated himself at Cæsar's feet. He sat there in silence till Cæsar ordered him to be removed and kept for his triumph in Rome. There he was led in the triumphal procession and afterwards put to death in prison.

Captivōrum circiter vīgintī mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. Titum Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficisci iubet; huic Mārcum Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. Gāium Fabium lēgātum et Lūcium Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. Gāium Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, Titum Sextium in Biturīgēs, Gāium Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Quīntum Tullium Cicerōnem et Pūblium Sulpiciū Cavillōnī¹ et Maticōne¹ in Aeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. His rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*

supplicātiō, ōnis, f., *thanksgiving*

¹ Cavillōnī, Maticōne: *Cavillonum* and *Matisco*, towns of the Aedui.

ANNOUNCEMENTS

TWO LATIN PLAYS

By SUSAN PAXSON, Teacher of Latin and German, High School, Omaha, Nebr.

12mo, cloth, xii + 39 pages, 45 cents

☞ "A Roman School" and "A Roman Wedding" are the only dramatizations in Latin which are in any way suitable for reproduction in the high schools. They were written by the author for the purpose of creating a new interest in the study of the classics among secondary pupils, and, as given already in several schools, have proved an effective stimulus to the class work.

☞ The plays give in turn a picture of school life in the days of Cæsar and Cicero, and again, of a high-class Roman wedding in the same period.

☞ The greatest care has been taken to make the detail authentic and the descriptions true to life. The diction is accurately classic, and there is plenty of humor and action.

☞ As a means of producing a genuine appreciation of Roman life and customs, and of making real the character of Latin literature, the book has unusual educational value.

RECENT LATIN BOOKS

LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

By BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE, Professor of Latin in Michigan State Normal College.
12mo, cloth, 348 pages, illustrated, with four colored plates and map in color, \$1.50.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN SYNTAX

By CHARLES CHRISTOPHER MIEROW, Instructor in Classics in Princeton University.
12mo, cloth, 98 pages, 90 cents.

LIVE ISSUES IN CLASSICAL STUDY

By KARL POMEROY HARRINGTON, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn. 12mo, cloth, 76 pages, 75 cents.

D'OOGÉ'S LATIN COMPOSITIONS

By BENJAMIN L. D'OOGÉ
Professor of Latin in the Michigan State Normal School, Ypsilanti

LATIN COMPOSITION FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS

12mo, cloth, 131 + 190 pages, \$1.00

PART I, BASED ON CÆSAR'S "GALLIC WAR." 12mo, cloth, xii + 131 pages, 50 cents
PARTS II AND III, BASED ON "CICERO." 12mo, cloth, 190 pages, 60 cents

PART I comprises the first volume and is to be used in connection with the first four books of "Cæsar" during the second year.

Parts II and III form the second volume. Part II, intended to accompany the work of the third year, is based on Cicero's "Mamilian Law," "Catiline," I-IV, and the "Archias." Part III, designed for a review of syntax in the fourth year, consists of thirty-five lessons of miscellaneous sentences based on "Cæsar" and "Cicero," and is accompanied by a special Vocabulary.

LATIN COMPOSITION TO ACCOMPANY GREENOUGH, D'OOGÉ, AND DANIELL'S SECOND YEAR LATIN

12mo, cloth, x + 131 pages, 50 cents

THIS book has been especially prepared for schools using Greenough, D'Ooge, and Daniell's "Second Year Latin." With the second volume of D'Ooge's "Latin Composition for Secondary Schools" it forms a complete course for schools that precede their work in "Cicero" with "Second Year Latin" rather than with the first four books of "Cæsar."

LATIN COMPOSITION TABLET

8vo tablet, 60 pages, 15 cents

THIS composition tablet includes a system of signs for the correction of exercises. The plan lessens the labor of the teacher and gives the pupil an opportunity for more than the usual amount of Latin writing.

BOSTON UNIVERSITY



1 1719 02753 7697

